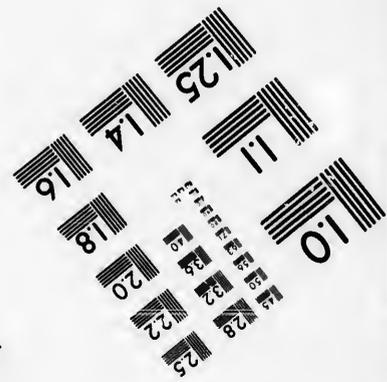
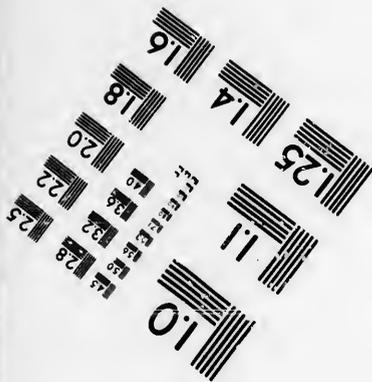
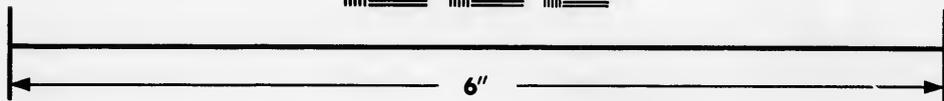
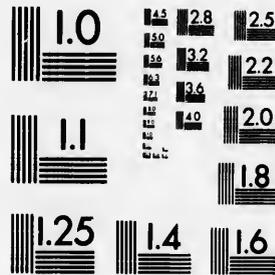


**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

**CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

© 1986

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured covers/
Couverture de couleur | <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured pages/
Pages de couleur |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Covers damaged/
Couverture endommagée | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages damaged/
Pages endommagées |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Covers restored and/or laminated/
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages restored and/or laminated/
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Cover title missing/
Le titre de couverture manque | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured maps/
Cartes géographiques en couleur | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages detached/
Pages détachées |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire) | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Showthrough/
Transparence |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured plates and/or illustrations/
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur | <input type="checkbox"/> Quality of print varies/
Qualité inégale de l'impression |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Bound with other material/
Relié avec d'autres documents | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Includes supplementary material/
Comprend du matériel supplémentaire |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion
along interior margin/
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la
distorsion le long de la marge intérieure | <input type="checkbox"/> Only edition available/
Seule édition disponible |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Blank leaves added during restoration may
appear within the text. Whenever possible, these
have been omitted from filming/
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées
lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte,
mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont
pas été filmées. | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata
slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to
ensure the best possible image/
Les pages totalement ou partiellement
obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure,
etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à
obtenir la meilleure image possible. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Additional comments:/
Commentaires supplémentaires: | |

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	12X	14X	16X	18X	20X	22X	24X	26X	28X	30X	32X
				<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>							

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

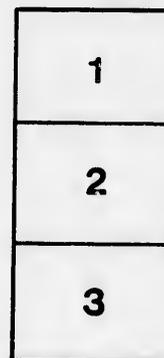
D. B. Weldon Library
University of Western Ontario
(Regional History Room)

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol \rightarrow (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ∇ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

D. B. Weldon Library
University of Western Ontario
(Regional History Room)

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole \rightarrow signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ∇ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

70 374

CLASSICAL WORKS.

LATIN TEXT-BOOKS.

Harkness's Introductory Latin Book, intended as an Elementary Drill-Book on the Inflections and Principles of the Language.

— **Latin Grammar**, for Schools and Colleges. Revised Edition.

— **Elements of Latin Grammar**, for Schools.

— **Latin Reader**, with References, Suggestions, Notes, and Vocabulary.

— **Practical Introduction to Latin Composition**, for Schools and Colleges. Part I. Elementary Exercises, intended as a Companion to the Reader. Part II. Latin Syntax. Part III. Elements of Latin Style, with special Reference to Idioms and Synonymes. (Just published.)

— **Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War**, with Notes, Dictionary, Life of Cæsar, Map of Gaul, Plans of Battles, etc.

— **Cicero's Select Orations**, with Notes, etc.

Arnold's First and Second Latin Book and Practical Grammar.* Revised and corrected. By J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo. 359 pages.

— **Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition**.* Revised and corrected. By J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo. 356 pages.

Cornelius Nepos,* with Questions and Answers, and an Imitative Exercise on each Chapter. With Notes by E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in University of New York. New edition, enlarged, with a Lexicon, Historical and Geographical Index, etc. 12mo. 350 pages.

Besa's Latin Version of the New Testament. 12mo. 291 pages.

Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory; a Lexicon, Geographical and Historical Indexes, and a Map of Gaul. By J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo. 408 pages.

Cicero's Select Orations. With Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in the University of New York. 12mo. 459 pages.

Cicero de Officiis. With English Notes, mostly translated from Zump and Bonnell. By THOMAS A. THACHER, of Yale College. 12mo. 194 pages.

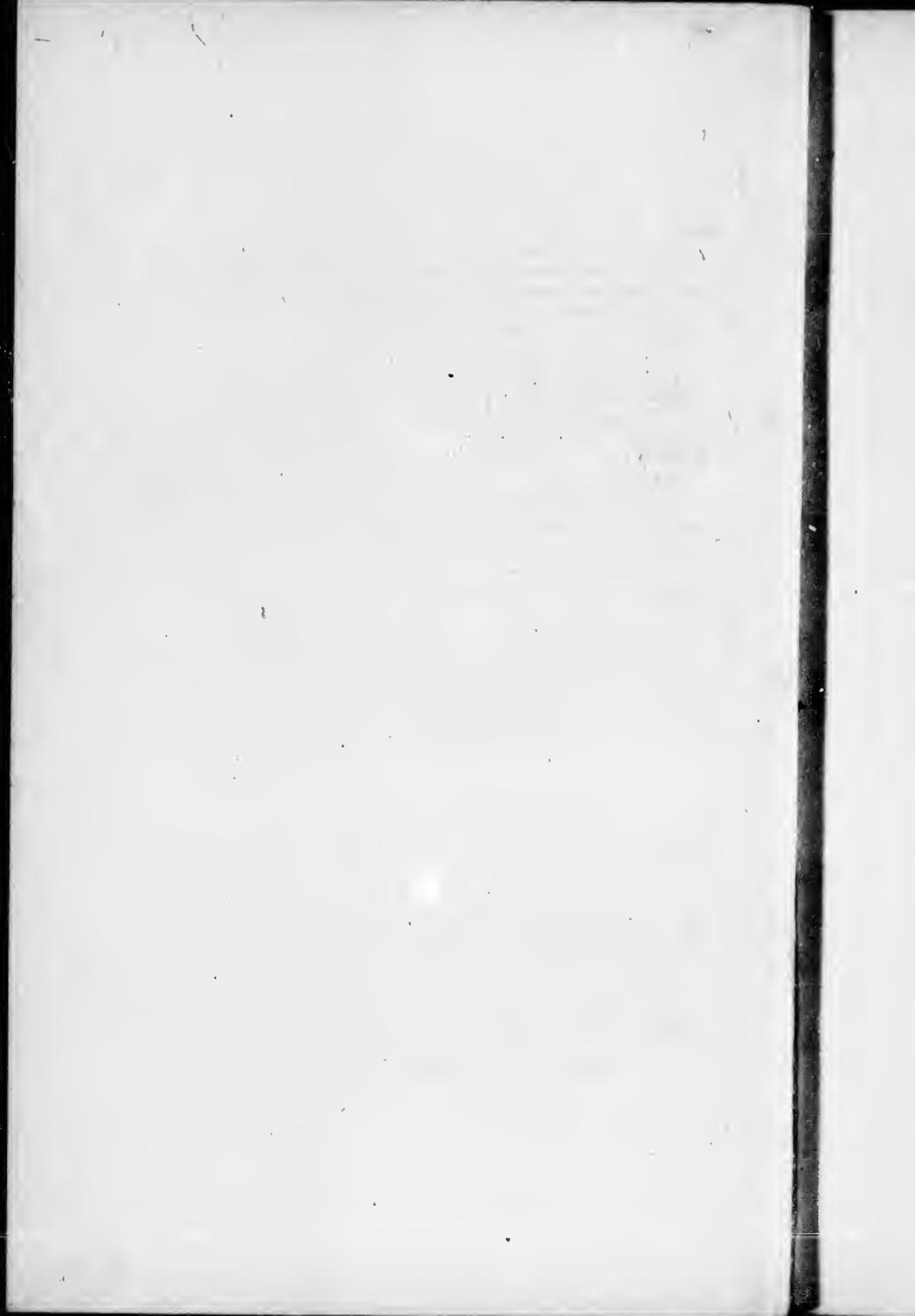
STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

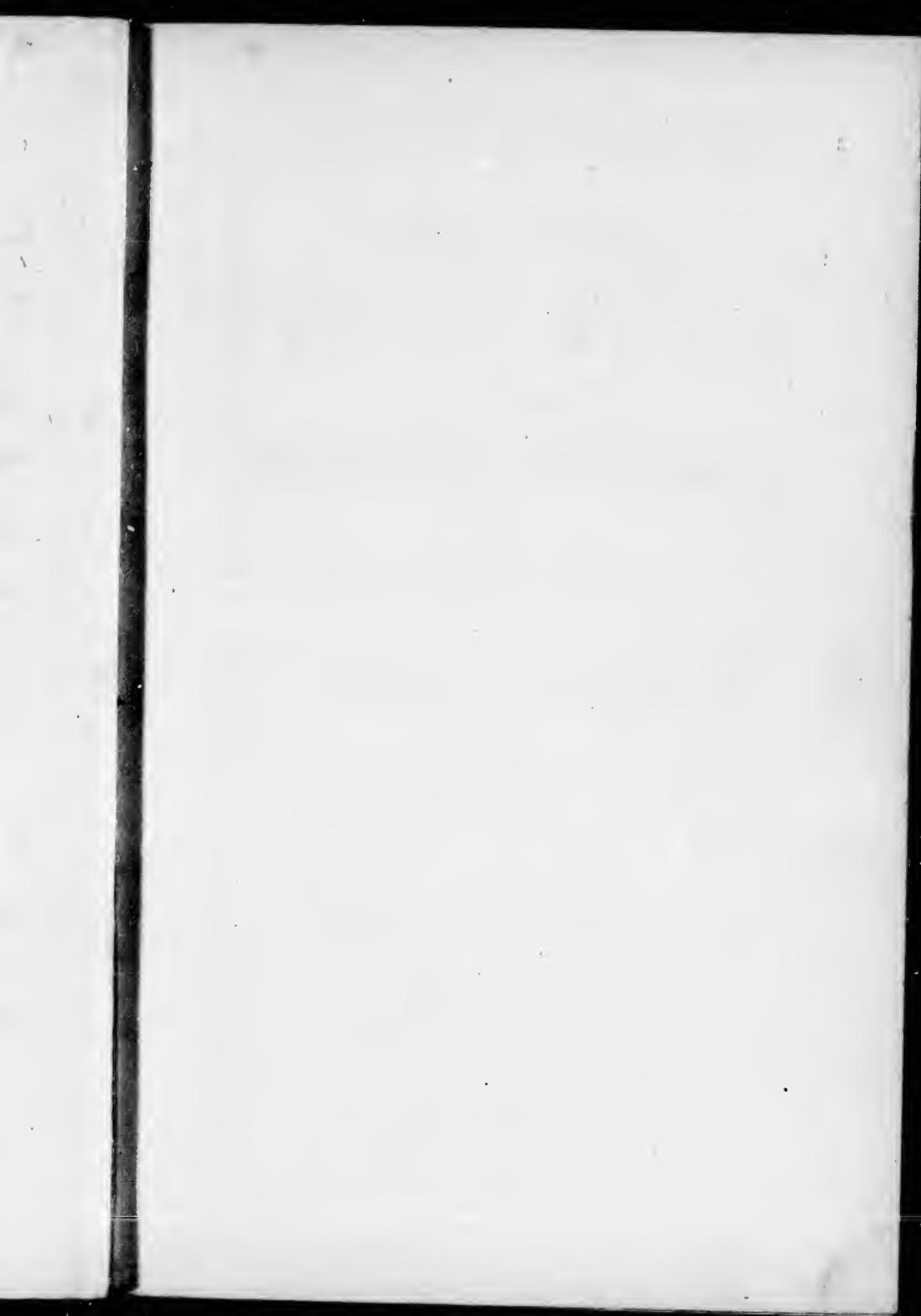
- Horace, The Works of.** With English Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By J. L. LINCOLN, Professor of Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 575 pages.
- Livy.** Selections from the first five books, together with the twenty-first and twenty-second books entire. With a Plan of Rome, and a Map of the Passage of Hannibal, and English Notes for the use of Schools. By J. L. LINCOLN, Prof. of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 329 pages.
- Quintus Curtius: Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great.** Edited and illustrated with English Notes, by WILLIAM HENRY CROSBY. 12mo. 386 pages.
- Sallust's Jugurtha and Catilina.** With Notes and a Vocabulary. By BUTLER and STURGEON. 12mo. 397 pages.
It is believed that this will be found superior to any edition heretofore published in this country.
- The Histories of Tacitus.** With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER, Professor of Latin and Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 453 pages.
- Tacitus's Germania and Agricola.** With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER. 12mo. 193 pages.
- Virgil's *Æneid*.*** With Explanatory Notes. By HENRY FREEB, Professor of Latin in the State University of Michigan. (Recently published.) 12mo. 598 pages.
The type is unusually large and distinct. The work contains eighty-five engravings, which delineate the usages, customs, weapons, arts, and mythology of the ancients, with a vividness that can be attained only by pictorial illustrations.

GREEK TEXT-BOOKS.

- A First Greek Book* and Introductory Reader.** By A. HARKNESS, Ph. D., author of "Arnold's First Latin Book," "Second Latin Book," etc. (Recently published.) 12mo. 276 pages.
- Acts of the Apostles,** according to the text of AUGUSTUS HAHN. With Notes and a Lexicon by JOHN J. OWEN, D. D., LL. D. With Map. 12mo.
- Arnold's First Greek Book,*** on the Plan of the First Latin Book. 12mo. 297 pages.
- Arnold's Practical Introduction to Greek Prose Composition.*** 12mo. 297 pages.
- Second Part to the above.* 12mo. 248 pages.

SEE END OF THIS VOLUME.





2

L

IN

The "AUTHORIZED TEXT BOOK" Series.

AN

INTRODUCTORY
LATIN BOOK,

INTENDED AS AN

ELEMENTARY DRILL-BOOK,

ON THE

INFLECTIONS AND PRINCIPLES OF THE LANGUAGE,

AND AS AN

INTRODUCTION

TO THE

AUTHOR'S GRAMMAR, READER AND LATIN COMPOSITION.

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS.

Revised Edition,

ADAPTED TO THE REVISED GRAMMAR.

TORONTO:
COPP, CLARK & CO.,
47 FRONT STREET EAST.
1881.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1866, by
ALBERT HARKNESS,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Rhode Island.

T
furn
men
our
jud
whi
gua
min
set
with
them
He
tive
men
scho
class
to li
and
ment
It
theor
langu
ple p
by a
gram
must
which
To

P R E F A C E.

THE volume now offered to the public is intended to furnish the pupil his first lessons in Latin. As an Elementary Drill-book, it aims to supply a want long felt in our schools. In no stage of a course of classical study is judicious instruction of more vital importance than in that which deals with the forms and elements of the Latin language. To the beginner, every thing is new, and requires minute and careful illustration. He must at the very outset become so familiar with all the grammatical inflections, with their exact form and force, that he will recognize them with promptness and certainty wherever they occur. He must not lose time in uncertain conjecture, where positive knowledge alone will be of any real value. Improvement on this point is one of the pressing needs of our schools. This volume is intended as a contribution to classical education in aid of this particular work. It aims to lighten the burden of the teacher in elementary drill, and to aid him in grounding his pupils in the first elements of the Latin language.

It is the unmistakable verdict of the class-room, that theory and practice must not be separated in the study of language. The true method of instruction will make ample provision for both. On the one hand, the pupil must, by a vigorous use of the memory, become master of all the grammatical forms and rules; while, on the other hand, he must not be denied the luxury of using the knowledge which he is so laboriously acquiring.

To this just and urgent demand of the class-room, the

author's First Latin Book, published fifteen years since, on the basis of Dr. Arnold's works, owed its origin. For the favor with which it was received, and for the generous interest with which it has so long been regarded, the author desires here to express his sincere thanks to the numerous classical instructors whose fidelity in its use has contributed so largely to its success. In the conviction, however, that it has now done its appointed work, he begs leave to offer them the present volume as its successor.

The great objection to most First Latin Books, that, however excellent they may be in themselves, they are not especially adapted to any particular Grammar, and that they accordingly fill the memory of the pupil with rules and statements which must, as far as possible, be unlearned as soon as he passes to his Grammar, is entirely obviated in this volume. All the grammatical portions of it, even to the numbering of the articles, are introduced in the exact form and language of the author's Grammar. Indeed, the paradigms are not only the same as in the Grammar, but also occupy the same place on the page; so that even the local associations which the beginner so readily forms with the pages of his first book may be transferred directly to the Grammar.

This work is intended to be complete in itself. It comprises a distinct outline of Latin Grammar, Exercises for Double Translation, Suggestions to the Learner, Notes and Vocabularies. As an Introduction to the author's Grammar, Reader and Latin Composition, it discusses and illustrates precisely those points which are deemed most essential as a preparation for the course of study presented in those works.

PROVIDENCE, R.I., June, 1866.

Alp
Sou

Syll
Qua
Acc

Gen
Pers
Cases
Decl
First

Secor

Third

Fourt

nce, on
 For the
 enerous
 author
 merous
 contrib-
 owever,
 eave to

s, that,
 are not
 d that
 h rules
 learned
 bviated
 it, even
 in the
 r. In-
 Gram-
 so that
 readily
 sferred

It com-
 ses for
 tes and
 Gram-
 d illus-
 essen-
 nted in

CONTENTS.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

	Page.
Alphabet	1
Sounds of Letters	2
Exercise I.	3
" II.	4
" III.	5
Syllables	6
Quantity	6
Accentuation	7
Exercise IV.	7

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

Gender	8
Person and Number	9
Cases	9
Declensions	10
First Declension	11
Exercise V.	11
Second Declension	13
Exercise VI.	14
" VII.	16
Third Declension	17
Exercise VIII.	23
" IX.	25
Fourth Declension	26
Exercise X.	27

	Page.
Fifth Declension	28
Exercise XI.	29

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

First and Second Declensions	30
Exercise XII.	33
Third Declension	35
Exercise XIII.	37
Comparison of Adjectives	38
Exercise XIV.	39
Numeral Adjectives	40
Exercise XV.	42

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns	43
Possessive	44
Demonstrative	44
Relative	45
Interrogative	46
Indefinite	46
Exercise XVI.	47

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

Voices	48
Moods	49
Tenses	50
Numbers	50
Persons	51
Conjugation	51
The Verb Sum	52
Exercise XVII.	56
" XVIII.	57
" XIX.	60
First Conjugation	62
Exercise XX.	66

Sec

Thi

Fou

Verb

Sectio

I.

II.

CONTENTS.

vii

Page.		Page.
28	Exercise XXI	67
29	“ XXII.	69
	“ XXIII.	71
	“ XXIV.	73
	“ XXV.	74
	“ XXVI.	75
30	“ XXVII.	76
33	Second Conjugation	78
35	Exercise XXVIII.	82
37	“ XXIX.	83
38	“ XXX.	84
39	“ XXXI.	85
40	“ XXXII.	86
42	“ XXXIII.	87
	“ XXXIV.	88
	Third Conjugation	90
	Exercise XXXV.	94
43	“ XXXVI.	95
44	“ XXXVII.	96
44	“ XXXVIII.	97
45	“ XXXIX.	97
46	“ XL.	98
46	“ XLI.	99
47	Fourth Conjugation	100
	Exercise XLII.	104
	“ XLIII.	104
	“ XLIV.	105
	“ XLV.	106
	“ XLVI.	107
48	“ XLVII.	107
49	“ XLVIII.	108
50	Verbs in 10	110
50	Exercise XLIX.	112
51		
51		
52		
56		
57		
60		
62		
66		

PART THIRD.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.

Section.	SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.	
I. Classification of Sentences		114
II. Simple Sentences		115

CHAPTER II.

Section.	SYNTAX OF NOUNS.	Page.
I.	Agreement of Nouns	117
	Exercise L.	117
	" LI.	119
II.	Nominative	120
	Exercise LII.	120
III.	Vocative	121
	Exercise LIII.	121
IV.	Accusative	122
	Exercise LIV.	123
	" LV.	124
	" LVI.	125
V.	Dative	126
	Exercise LVII.	127
	" LVIII.	129
VI.	Genitive	130
	Exercise LIX.	131
	" LX.	132
VII.	Ablative	133
	Exercise LXI.	135
	" LXII.	137
	" LXIII.	138
	" LXIV.	140
VIII.	Cases with Prepositions	141
	Exercise LXV.	142
	Suggestions to the Learner	143
	Latin-English Vocabulary	147
	English-Latin Vocabulary	157

EX

T

T

abl.

acc.

act.

adv.

conj.

dat.

f.

gen.

indef.

intern

m.

Page.

- . 117
- . 117
- . 119
- . 120
- . 120
- . 121
- . 121
- . 122
- . 123
- . 124
- . 125
- . 126
- . 127
- . 129
- . 130
- . 131
- . 132
- . 133
- . 135
- . 137
- . 138
- . 140
- . 141
- . 142
- . 143
- . 147
- . 157

EXPLANATION OF REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS.



The numerals refer to articles in this work.

The following abbreviations occur :

abl.	ablative.	n.	neuter.
acc.	accusative.	nom.	nominative.
act.	active.	p.	page.
adv.	adverb.	part.	particle.
conj.	conjunction.	pass.	passive.
dat.	dative.	pers.	person.
f.	feminine.	plur., or pl.	plural.
gen.	genitive.	prep.	preposition.
indcf.	indefinite.	rel.	relative.
interrog.	interrogative.	sing.	singular.
m.	masculine.	voc.	vocative.

la

th

cl

TH

bu

INTRODUCTORY LATIN BOOK.

1. LATIN GRAMMAR treats of the principles of the Latin language.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.¹

ALPHABET.

2. THE Latin alphabet is the same as the English, with the omission of *w*.

3. CLASSES OF LETTERS. — Letters are divided into two classes: —

I. VOWELS a, e, i, o, u, y.

II. CONSONANTS:—

1. *Liquids* l, m, n, r.

2. *Spirants* h, f, v, j, s.

3. *Mutes*: 1) Labials — *lip-letters* b, p, f, v.

2) Dentals — *teeth-letters* d, t.

3) Gutturals — *throat-letters* c, g, k, q, h.

4. *Double Consonants* x, z.

4. COMBINATIONS OF LETTERS. — We notice here,

1. *Diphthongs*, — combinations of two vowels in one syllable. The most common are *ae*, *oe*, *au*.

2. *Double Consonants*, — *x* = *cs* or *gs*; *z* = *ds* or *sd*.

3. *Ch*, *ph*, *th*, are best treated, not as combinations of letters, but only as aspirated forms of *c*, *p*, and *t*, as *h* is only a breathing.

¹ Orthography treats of the letters and sounds of the language.

5. PRONUNCIATION. — Scholars in different countries generally pronounce Latin substantially as they do their own languages. In this country, however, three distinct *Methods* are recognized, generally known as the *English*, the *Roman*, and the *Continental*.¹ For the convenience of the instructor, we add a brief outline of each.²

ENGLISH METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

1. SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS.

6. Vowels generally have their long or short English sounds.

7. LONG SOUNDS. — Vowels have their long English sounds — **a** as in *fate*, **e** in *mete*, **i** in *pine*, **o** in *note*, **u** in *tube*, **y** in *type* — in the following situations: —

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel: *se*, *si*, *ser'-vi*, *ser'-vo*, *cor'-nu*, *mi'-sy*.

2. In all syllables before a vowel or diphthong: *de'-us*, *de-o'-rum*, *de'-ae*, *di-e'-i*, *ni'-hi-lum*.³

3. In penultimate⁴ syllables before a single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*: *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *A'-thos*, *O'-thrys*.

4. In unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*: *do-lo'-ris*, *a-gri'-o-la*.

1) **A** unaccented has the sound of a final in *America*: *men'-sa*.

8. SHORT SOUNDS. — Vowels have their short English sounds — **a** as in *fat*, **e** in *met*, **i** in *pin*, **o** in *not*, **u** in *tub*, **y** in *myth* — in the following situations: —

¹ Strictly speaking, there is no Continental Method, as every nation on the continent of Europe has its own method.

² The pupil will, of course, study only the method adopted in the school.

³ In these rules no account is taken of *h*, as that is only a breathing: hence the first *i* in *nihilum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel. For the same reason, *ch*, *ph*, and *th* are treated as single mutes: thus, *th* in *Athos* and *Othrys*.

⁴ Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant: *a'-mat*, *a'-met*, *rex'-it*, *sol*, *con'-sul*, *Te'-thys*; except *post*, *es final*, and *os final* in plural cases: *res*, *di'-es*, *hos*, *a'-gros*.

2. In all syllables before *x*, or any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r* (7, 3 and 4): *rex'-it*, *bel'-lum*, *rex-e'-runt*, *bel-lo'-rum*.

3. In all accented syllables not penultimate, before one or more consonants: *dom'-i-nus*, *pat'-ri-bus*. But,

1) *A*, *e*, or *o*, before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*) followed by *e*, *i*, or *y*, before another vowel, has the long sound: *a'-ci-es*, *a'-cri-a*, *me'-re-o*, *do'-ce-o*.

2) *U*, in any syllable not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, except *bl*, has the long sound: *Pu'-ni-cus*, *sa-lu'-bri-tas*.

2. SOUNDS OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

9. **Æ** like *e*: *Cae'-sar*, *Daed'-a-lus*.¹

Oe like *e*: *Oe'-ta*, *Oed'-i-pus*.¹

Au, as in author: *au'-rum*.

Eu . . . neuter: *neu'-ter*.²

3. SOUNDS OF THE CONSONANTS.

10. The consonants are pronounced, in general, as in English; but a few directions may aid the learner.

11. **C**, **G**, **S**, **T**, and **X** are generally pronounced with their ordinary English sounds. Thus,

1. **C** and **g** are *soft* (like *s* and *j*) before *e*, *i*, *y*, *ae*, and *oe*, and *hard* in other situations: *ce'-do* (*se'do*), *ci'-vis*, *Cy'-rus*, *cae'-do*, *coe'-pi*, *a'-ge* (*a'-je*), *a'-gi*; *ca'-do* (*ka'do*), *co'-go*, *cum*, *Ga'-des*.

2. **S** generally has its English sound, as in son, this: *sa'-cer*, *si'-dus*.

¹ The diphthong has the *long sound* in *Cae'-sar* and *Oe'-ta*, according to 7, 3, but the *short sound* in *Daed'-a-lus* (*Ded'-a-lus*) and *Oed'-i-pus* (*Ed'-i-pus*), according to 8, 3, as *e* would be thus pronounced in the same situations.

² *Ei* and *ui*, when used as diphthongs, have the long sound of *i*: *hei*, *cui*.

1) *S* final after *e*, *ae*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, *r*, is pronounced like *z*: *spes*, *praes*, *laus*, *urbs*, *hī'ems*, *mons*, *pars*.

3. *T* has its regular English sound as in time: *tī'mor*, *to'tus*.

4. *X* has generally its regular English sound, like *ks*: *rex'i* (*rek'si*), *ux'or* (*uk'sor*).

12. **C, S, T, X**, aspirated. — Before *i* preceded by an accented syllable, and followed by a vowel, *c*, *s*, *t*, and *x* are aspirated; *c*, *s*, and *t* taking the sound of *sh*, *x* that of *ksh*: *so'ci-us* (*so'she-us*), *Al'si-um* (*Al'she-um*), *ar'ti-um* (*ar'she-um*), *anx'i-us* (*ank'she-us*). *C* has also the sound of *sh* before *eu* and *yo* preceded by an accented syllable: *ca-du'ce-us* (*ca-du'she-us*), *Sic'y-on* (*Sish'e-on*).

4. SYLLABLES.

13. In Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs: *mo're*, *per-sua'de*, *men'sae*.

EXERCISE I.

Pronounce the following words according to the English Method.

1. Men'sam,¹ men'sas, men'sis, men'sae,² men-sa-rum.³ 2. Ho'ram,⁴ ho'ras, ho'ris, ho'rae,⁵ ho-ra-rum.⁶ 3. Scho'la,⁷ scho'lam, scho'las, scho'lis, scho'lae, scho-la-rum. 4. Co-ro'na,⁷ co-ro-nam, co-ro-nas, co-ro-nis, co-ro-nae.⁸ 5. Ci'vis,⁹ civ'i-um, civ'i-bus. 6. Car-men,¹⁰ car'mi-nis, car'mi-ne.¹¹ 7. Rex,¹² re'gis,¹³ re'gi, re-gum.¹³ 8. A'ci-em,¹⁴ a'ci-e, a'ci-es.¹⁵

¹ 8, 2; 8, 1.

⁶ 7, 3; 8, 1.

¹¹ 8, 3; 7, 3; 7, 1.

² 8, 2; 9; 7, 1.

⁷ 7, 3; 7, 3, 1).

¹² 11, 4.

³ 8, 2; 7, 3; 8, 1.

⁸ 7, 3; 9; 7, 1.

¹³ 11, 1; 7, 3; 8, 1.

⁴ 7, 3; 8, 1.

⁹ 11, 1 and 2; 7, 3; 8, 1.

¹⁴ 8, 3, 1); 12; 8, 1.

⁵ 7, 3; 9; 7, 1.

¹⁰ 11, 1; 8, 2; 8, 1.

¹⁵ 11, 2, 1).

ROMAN METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

1. SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS.

15. The vowel sounds are the following: —

LONG.		SHORT.	
ā	like <i>a</i> in father: <i>ā'-rīs</i> .	ǎ	like <i>a</i> in fast: <i>ǎ'-mēt</i> .
ē	<i>a</i> made: <i>ē'-dī</i> .	ě	<i>e</i> net: <i>rě'-gět</i> .
ī	<i>e</i> me: <i>ī'-rī</i> .	ɨ	<i>i</i> divert: <i>vī'-dět</i> .
ō	<i>o</i> rode: <i>ō'-rās</i> .	ǫ	<i>o</i> romance: <i>mǫ'-nět</i> .
ū	<i>o</i> do: <i>ū'-nō</i> .	ũ	<i>u</i> full: <i>sũ'-mūs</i> .

1. When a short vowel is lengthened by position (21, 2), it retains its short sound: *sunt*, *u* as in *sũ'-mūs*.

4. U. — After *q*, and generally after *g*, *u* has the sound of *w*: *quī* (*kwe*), *lin'-guā* (*lin'-gwa*). So also in *cut*, *hut*, *huic*, and sometimes after *s*: *suā'-dē-o* (*swa'-de-o*).

2. SOUNDS OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

16. In diphthongs, each vowel retains its own sound: —

ae (for *ai*) like the English *aye* (*yes*): *men'-sae*.¹

au like *ow* in *how*: *cau'-sā*.

oe (for *oi*) like *oi* in *coin*: *foe'-dūs*.

1. **Ei**, as in *veil*, and **eu**, with the sounds of *e* and *u* combined, occur in a few words: *dein*, *neu'-tēr*.

3. SOUNDS OF THE CONSONANTS.

17. Most of the consonants are pronounced nearly as in English; but the following require special notice: —

c like *k* in *king*: *cē'-lēs* (*kalas*), *cī'-vī* (*kewe*).

g *g* get: *gē'-nūs*, *rē'-gīs*.

j *y* yet: *jǎ'-cět* (*yaket*), *jūs'-sūm*.

s *s* son: *sǎ'-cēr*, *sō'-rōr*.

t *t* time: *tī'-mōr*, *tō'-tūs*.

v *w* we: *vǎ'-dūm*, *vī'-cī*.

¹ Combining the sounds of *a* and *i*.

4. SYLLABLES.

13. In dividing words into syllables, make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: *mō'-rē*, *persuā'-dē*, *men'-sae*.

EXERCISE II.

Pronounce the following Words according to the Roman Method.

1. *Hō'-rā*, *hō'-rām*, *hō'-rās*, *hō'-rīs*, *hō'-rae*, *hō-rā'-rūm*.
 2. *Glō'-rī-ā*, *glō'-rī-ām*, *glō'-rī-ae*. 3. *Dō'-nūm*, *dō'-nī*, *dō'-nō*, *dō'-nā*, *dō-nō'-rūm*, *dō'-nis*. 4. *Cī'-vīs*, *cī'-vī*, *cī'-vēm*, *cī'-vēs*, *cī'-vī-ūm*, *cī'-vī-būs*.

CONTINENTAL METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

19. The Continental Method, as adopted in this country, is almost identical with the Roman, except in the pronunciation of the consonants, in which it more nearly coincides with the English. See 15, 16, 10, 11, 12, and 18.

EXERCISE III.

Pronounce the following Words according to the Continental Method.

1. *Hō'-rā*, *hō'-rām*, *hō'-rās*, *hō'-rīs*, *hō'-rae*, *hō-rā'-rūm*.
 2. *Glō'-rī-ā*, *glō'-rī-ām*, *glō'-rī-ae*. 3. *Dō'-nūm*, *dō'-nī*, *dō'-nō*, *dō'-nā*, *dō-nō'-rūm*, *dō'-nis*. 4. *Cī'-vīs*, *cī'-vī*, *cī'-vēm*, *cī'-vēs*, *cī'-vī-ūm*, *cī'-vī-būs*.

QUANTITY.

20. Syllables are in quantity or length either long, short, or common.¹

21. LONG. — A syllable is long in quantity,

1. If it contains a diphthong: *haec*.

¹ Common; i.e., sometimes long, and sometimes short.

2. If its vowel is followed by *j, x, z*, or any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r*: *rex, mons*.

22. SHORT. — A syllable is short, if its vowel is followed by another vowel or a diphthong: *dī-ēs, vī-ae, nī-hīl*.¹

23. COMMON. — A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally² short, is followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: *a'-grī*.

1. The signs $\bar{\text{—}}$, $\check{\text{—}}$, — , are used to mark quantity, the first denoting that the syllable over which it is placed is *long*, the second that it is *short*, and the third that it is *common*: *ā-grō-rūm*.³

ACCENTUATION.

24. Words of two syllables are always accented on the first: *men'-sa*.

25. Words of more than two syllables are accented⁴ on

¹ No account is taken of the breathing *h*. See 7, 2, note 3.

² A vowel is said to be *naturally* short, when it is short in its own nature; i.e., in itself, without reference to its position.

³ By referring to 15 and 19, it will be seen, that, in the Roman Method and in the Continental, *quantity* and *sound* coincide with each other: a vowel long in quantity is long in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is short in sound. But, by referring to 7 and 8, it will be seen, that, in the English Method, the quantity of a vowel does not at all affect its sound, except in determining the accent (25). Hence, in this method, a vowel long in quantity is often short in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is often long in sound. Thus in *rēx, ūrbs, ārs, sōl*, the vowels are all long in quantity; but by 8, 1, they all have the short English sounds: while in *avē, mārē*, the vowels are all short in quantity; but by 7, 1, and 3, they all have the long English sounds. Hence, in pronouncing according to the English Method, determine the place of the accent by the quantity (according to 25), and then determine the sounds of the letters irrespective of quantity (according to 7-12).

⁴ In the subsequent pages, the pupil will be expected to accent words in pronunciation according to these rules. The quantity of the penult in words of more than two syllables will therefore be marked (unless determined by 21 and 22), to enable him to ascertain the place of the accent.

the *Penult*,¹ if that is long in quantity; otherwise on the *Antepenult*:¹ *hō-nō'-ris*, *con'-sū-lis*.

4. A second accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent; on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity, otherwise on the third: *mōn'-u-ē'-runt*; *mōn'-u-ē'-rā'-mūs*; *in-stau'-rā-vē'-runt*.

EXERCISE IV.

*Accent and pronounce the following Words.*²

1. *Cōrōnā*,³ *cōrōnac*, *cōrōnārūm*.⁴ 2. *Gemmae*,⁵ *gemma*, *gemma-rūm*. 3. *Sāpientiae*,⁶ *āmicītia*, *justītia*, *glōriāe*.⁷ 4. *Sāpientiām*, *āmicītiām*, *justītiām*, *glōriām*. 5. *Sāpientiā*, *āmicītiā*, *justītiā*, *glōriā*.

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

37. ETYMOLOGY treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

38. The Parts of Speech³ are: *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, *Pronouns*, *Verbs*, *Adverbs*, *Prepositions*, *Conjunctions*, and *Interjections*.

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

39. A Noun or Substantive is a name, as of a person, place, or thing: *Cicēro*, *Cicero*; *Rōmā*, *Rome*; *dōmūs*, *house*.

¹ Penult, last syllable but one; antepenult, the last but two.

² According to the method adopted in the school.

³ 25; 7, 4, 1).

⁴ 11, 1; 24.

⁷ 11, 1; 8, 3, 1).

⁴ 25, 4.

⁶ 25, 4; 8, 3, 1); 12.

⁸ Thus in Latin, as in English, words are divided, according to their use, into eight classes, called *Parts of Speech*.

1. A **PROPER NOUN** is a proper name, as of a person or place: *Cicĕro*; *Rōmā*.

2. A **COMMON NOUN** is a name common to all the members of a class of objects: *vĭr*, a man; *ĕquŭs*, horse.

40. Nouns have *Gender, Number, Person, and Case*.

I. GENDER.

41. There are three genders: ¹ *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter*.

1. In some nouns, gender is determined by signification; in others, by endings.

42. GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER.

I. MASCULINES.

1. Names of *Males*: *Cicĕro*; *vĭr*, man; *rex*, king.

2. Names of *Rivers, Winds, and Months*: *Rhĕnŭs*, Rhine; *Nōtŭs*, south wind; *Martiŭs*, March.

II. FEMININES.

1. Names of *Females*: *mŭliĕr*, woman; *leaenā*, lioness.

2. Names of *Countries, Towns, Islands, and Trees*: *Aegyptŭs*, Egypt; *Rōmā*, Rome; *Dĕlōs*, Delos; *pĭrŭs*, pear-tree.

II. PERSON AND NUMBER.

44. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one; the plural, more than one.

¹ In English, *gender* denotes *sex*. Accordingly, masculine nouns denote *males*; feminine nouns, *females*; and neuter nouns, objects which are *neither male nor female*. In Latin, however, this natural distinction of gender is applied only to the names of *males* and *females*; while, in all other nouns, gender depends upon an artificial distinction, according to grammatical rules.

III. CASES.¹

45. The Latin has six cases : —

Names.	English Equivalents.
Nominative,	Nominative.
Genitive,	Possessive, or Objective with <i>of</i> .
Dative,	Objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> .
Accusative,	Objective.
Vocative,	Nominative Independent.
Ablative,	Objective with <i>from</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>with</i> .

1. OBLIQUE CASES. — The Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative are called the Oblique Cases.

2. LOCATIVE. — The Latin has also a few remnants of another case, called the Locative, denoting the *place in which*.

DECLENSION.

46. STEM AND ENDINGS. — The process by which the several cases of a word are formed is called Declension. It consists in the addition of certain endings to one common base, called the stem.

1. MEANING. — Accordingly each case-form contains two distinct elements: the *stem*, which gives the general meaning of the word, and the *case-ending*, which shows the relation of that meaning to some other word. Thus in *rēg-is*, of a king, the general idea, *king*, is denoted by the stem *reg*; the relation *of*, by the ending *is*.

2. CASES ALIKE. — But certain cases are not distinguished in form.

1) The *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative* in *neuters* are alike, and in the plural end in *a*.

2) The *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike, except in the singular of nouns in *us* of the second declension (51).²

3) The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* are alike.

¹ The *case* of a noun shows the relation which that noun sustains to other words; as, *John's book*. Here the *possessive case* shows that John sustains to the book the relation of *possessor*.

² And in some nouns of Greek origin.

47. FIVE DECLENSIONS. — In Latin there are five declensions, distinguished from each other by the endings of the Stem, or of the Genitive Singular, as follows : —

	STEM-ENDINGS.	GENITIVE ENDINGS.
DEC. I.	a	ae
II.	o	i
III.	i or consonant.	is
IV.	u	ūs
V.	e	ēi

FIRST DECLENSION. — A NOUNS.

48. Nouns of the first declension end in **ā** and **ē**, feminine; **ās** and **ēs**, masculine.¹

Nouns in *a* are declined as follows : —

Example.	SINGULAR.	Meaning.	Case-Endings.
Nom. mens ā ,		a table,	ā
Gen. mens ae ,		of a table,	ae
Dat. mens ae ,		to, for, a table,	ae
Acc. mens ām ,		a table,	ām
Voc. mens ā ,		O table,	ā
Abl. mens ā ,		with, from, by, a table,	ā
	PLURAL.		
Nom. mens ae ,		tables,	ae
Gen. mens arūm ,		of tables,	arūm
Dat. mens is ,		to, for, tables,	is
Acc. mens as ,		tables,	as
Voc. mens ae ,		O tables,	ae
Abl. mens is ,		with, from, by, tables,	is.

1. STEM. — In nouns of the First Declension, the stem ends in **a**.

2. In the PARADIGM, observe,

1) That the stem is *mensa*, and that the Nominative Singular is the same.

¹ That is, nouns of this declension in *a* and *e* are feminine, and those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

2) That the several cases are distinguished from each other by their case-endings.

3) That these case-endings contain the stem-ending **a**.

3. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE. — Like *mensa* decline: —

Ala, wing; *āqua*, water; *causa*, cause; *fortūna*, fortune.

4. LOCATIVE. — Names of towns, and a very few other words, have a Locative Singular in **ae**: *Rōmae*, at Rome; *militiae*, in war.

EXERCISE V.

I. Vocabulary.

Amicitīā,	ae, ¹ f. ²	friendship.
Corōnā,	ae, f.	crown.
Gemmā,	ae, f.	gem.
Gloriā,	ae, f.	glory.
Hōrā,	ae, f.	hour.
Justitiā,	ae, f.	justice.
Sāpientiā,	ae, f.	wisdom.
Schōlā,	ae, f.	school.

II. Translate into English.

1. Corōnā,³ corōnā, corōnae,⁴ corōnam, coronārum, corōnis, corōnas. 2. Gemmā, gemmā, gemmae, gemmam, gemmārum, gemmis, gemmas. 3. Sapientiā, amicitīā, justitiā, gloriā. 4. Sapiētiām, amicitiam, justitiām, gloriām. 5. Sapiētiā, amicitīā, justitiā, gloriā. 6. Scholārum, horārum. 7. Scholis, horis. 8. Scholas, horas.

¹ The ending *ae* is the case-ending of the Genitive: *amicitia*; Gen., *amicitiae*.

² Gender is indicated in the vocabularies by *m.* for *masculine*, *f.* for *feminine*, and *n.* for *neuter*.

³ As the Latin has no article, a noun may, according to the connection in which it is used, be translated (1) without the article; as, *corōna*, crown; (2) with the indefinite article *a* or *an*; as, *corōna*, a crown; (3) with the definite article *the*; as, *corōna*, the crown.

⁴ When the same Latin form may be found in two or more cases, the pupil is expected to give the meaning for each case. Thus *corōnae* may be in the Genitive or Dative Singular, or in the Nominative or Vocative Plural.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Friendship, friendships. 2. Of¹ friendship, of friendships. 3. To friendship, to friendships. 4. By friendship, by friendships. 5. Justice, by justice, of justice, to justice. 6. Wisdom, glory. 7. With wisdom, with glory. 8. To wisdom, to glory. 9. Of wisdom, of glory. 10. Of a² crown, of a gem. 11. With the² crowns, with the gems.

SECOND DECLENSION. — O NOUNS.

51. Nouns of the second declension end in

ēr, ir, ūs, and **os**, masculine; **ŭm**, and **on**, neuter.

Nouns in *er, ir, us*, and *um*, are declined as follows:—

Servus, slave. Puer, boy. Ager, field. Templum, temple.

SINGULAR.

N. serv ŭs	puēr	āgēr	templ ŭm
G. serv ī	puēr ī	āgr ī	templ ī
D. serv ō	puēr ō	agr ō	templ ō
A. serv ŭm	puēr ŭm	agr ŭm	templ ŭm
V. serv ē	puēr	agēr	templ ŭm
A. serv ō	puēr ō	agr ō	templ ō

PLURAL.

N. serv ī	puēr ī	āgr ī	templ ā
G. serv ōrŭm	puēr ōrŭm	agr ōrŭm	templ ōrŭm
D. serv īs	puēr īs	agr īs	templ īs
A. serv ōs	puēr ōs	agr ōs	templ ā
V. serv ī	puēr ī	agr ī	templ ā
A. serv īs .	puēr īs .	agr īs .	templ īs .

1. STEM. — In nouns of the Second Declension, the stem ends in **o**.

2. In the PARADIGMS, observe,

¹ The pupil will observe that the English prepositions, *of, to, by*, may be rendered into Latin by simply changing the ending of the word. Thus *friendship*, *amicitia*; *of friendship*, *amicitiae*.

² The pupil will remember that the English articles, *a, an*, and *the*, are not to be rendered into Latin at all. *Crown, a crown*, and *the crown*, are all rendered into Latin by the same word.

- 1) That the stems are *servo*, *puĕro*; *agro*, and *templo*.
- 2) That the stem-ending *o* becomes *u* in the endings *us* and *um*.
- 3) That the case-endings, including the stem-ending *o*, are as follows: —

SINGULAR.	
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> ūs ¹	ŭm
<i>Gen.</i> i	i
<i>Dat.</i> ō	ō
<i>Acc.</i> ūm	ŭm
<i>Voc.</i> ĕ ¹	ŭm
<i>Abl.</i> ō	ō
PLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i> i	ă
<i>Gen.</i> ōrŭm	ōrŭm
<i>Dat.</i> is	is
<i>Acc.</i> ōs	ă
<i>Voc.</i> i	ă
<i>Abl.</i> is.	is.

3. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE. — Like *SERVUS*: *dŏmĭnus*, master. Like *PUER*: *gĕner*, son-in-law. Like *AGER*: *măgister*, master. Like *TEMPLUM*: *bellum*, war.

6. LOCATIVE. — Names of towns, and a few other words, have a Locative Singular in *i*: *Cŏrinthi*, at Corinth; *hŭmi*, on the ground.

EXERCISE VI.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>Dŏnŭm</i> , i, n.	<i>gift.</i>
<i>Gĕnĕr</i> , <i>gĕnĕrĭ</i> , m.	<i>son-in-law.</i>
<i>Lĭbĕr</i> , <i>lĭbrĭ</i> , m.	<i>book.</i>
<i>Ocŭlŭs</i> , i, m.	<i>eye.</i>
<i>Praeceptŭm</i> , i, n.	<i>rule, precept.</i>
<i>Sŏcĕr</i> , <i>sŏcĕrĭ</i> , m.	<i>father-in-law.</i>
<i>Tŭrannŭs</i> , i, m.	<i>tyrant.</i>
<i>Verbŭm</i> , i, n.	<i>word.</i>

¹ The endings of the Nominative and Vocative Singular are wanting in nouns in *er*.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Oculus, oculi, oculo, oculum, ocule, oculorum, oculis, oculos. 2. Socer, soceri, socero, socerum, socerorum, soceris, soceros. 3. Servi, tyranni. 4. Pueri, generi. 5. Agri, libri. 6. Templi, doni. 7. Servo, tyranno. 8. Puerum, generum. 9. Agrorum, librorum. 10. Tempia, dona. 11. Servum, servos. 12. Generi, generorum. 13. Agri, agrorum. 14. Dono, donis. 15. Verbi, praecepti.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The slave, the slaves. 2. For the slave, for the slaves. 3. Of the slave, of the slaves. 4. Of the father-in-law, of the son-in-law. 5. Of the fathers-in-law, of the sons-in-law. 6. For the fathers-in-law, for the sons-in-law. 7. The boy, the field. 8. The boys, the fields. 9. The gift, the gifts. 10. With the gift, with the gifts.

SECOND DECLENSION. — CONTINUED.

RULE II — Appositives.

363. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE:¹

Cluilius rex moritur, *Cluilius the king dies.* — Liv. Urbes Carthago atque Numantia, *the cities Carthage and Numantia.* — Cic.

I. DIRECTIONS FOR PARSING.

In parsing a Noun, Adjective, or Pronoun,

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.
2. Decline² it.

¹ A noun or pronoun used to explain or identify another noun or pronoun denoting the same person or thing, is called an *appositive*; as, *Cluilius rex*, Cluilius the king. Here *rex*, the king, is the appositive, showing the rank or office of Cluilius, — *Cluilius the king*. The noun or pronoun to which the appositive is added — *Cluilius* in the example — is called the *subject* of the appositive.

² Adjectives should also be compared (162).

3. Give its Gender, Number, Case, &c.
4. Give its Syntax,¹ and the Rule for it.

MODEL.

Artēmisiā rēginā, *Artemisia the queen.*

Regina is a noun (39) of the First Declension (48), as it has *ae* in the Genitive Singular (47); STEM, *regīna* (48, 1). Singular: *regīna, regīnae, regīnae, regīnam, regīnā, regīnā*. Plural: *regīnae, regīnārum, regīnis, regīnas, regīnae, regīnis*. It is of the Feminine gender, as the names of females are feminine by 42, II. 1. It is in the Nominative Singular, in apposition with its subject *Artemisia*, with which it agrees in *case*, according to Rule II.: "An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE."

EXERCISE VII.

I. Vocabulary.

Cāitūs, ii, m.	<i>Caius</i> , a proper name.
Filiā, aq, f.	<i>daughter</i> .
Hastā, ae, f.	<i>spear</i> .
Pisistrātūs, i, m.	<i>Pisistratus</i> , Tyrant of Athens.
Rāmūs, i, m.	<i>branch</i> .
Rēginā, ae, f.	<i>queen</i> .
Tulliā, ae, f.	<i>Tullia</i> , a proper name.

II. Translate into English.

1. Ramus, hastā. 2. Rami, hastae. 3. Ramo, hastae. 4. Ramum, hastam. 5. Ramo, hastā. 6. Ramōrum, hastārum. 7. Ramis, hastis. 8. Ramos, hastas. 9. Tyranni, tyrannōrum. 10. Verbum, verba. 11. Verbo, verbis. 12. Templum, templa. 13. Templi, templōrum. 14. Pisistrātus tyrannus.² 15. Pisistrāti tyranni. 16. Pisistrāto tyranno. 17. Tulliā filiā. 18. Tulliae filiae.

¹ By the *Syntax* of a word is meant the grammatical construction of it. Thus we give the Syntax of *regīna*, under the Model, by stating that it is in apposition with its subject, *Artemista*.

² *Tyrannus* is an appositive, in the Nominative, in agreement with its subject, *Pisistrātus*, according to Rule II. 363.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The tyrant, the crown. 2. The tyrants, the crowns.
 3. Of the tyrant, of the crown. 4. Of the tyrants, of the crowns.
 5. To the tyrant, to the crown. 6. To the tyrants, to the crowns.
 7. The book, the books. 8. With the book, with the books.
 9. Of Pisistratus, for Pisistratus. 10. Of the queen, for the queen.
 11. Caius the slave. 12. Of Caius the slave. 13. For Caius the slave.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CONSONANT AND I NOUNS.

55. Nouns of the third declension end in

a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x

56. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes: —

I. Nouns whose stem ends in a *Consonant*.

II. Nouns whose stem ends in **I**.

CLASS I. — CONSONANT STEMS.

57. STEMS ENDING IN A LABIAL: **B** OR **P**.

Princeps, M., ¹	<i>a leader, chief.</i>	Case-Endings.
	SINGULAR.	
N. princeps,	<i>a leader,</i>	s
G. principis,	<i>of a leader,</i>	is
D. principī,	<i>to, for, a leader,</i>	i
A. principem,	<i>a leader,</i>	em
V. princeps,	<i>O leader,</i>	s
A. principē,	<i>with, from, by, a leader,</i>	e
	PLURAL.	
N. principēs,	<i>leaders,</i>	ēs
G. principūm,	<i>of leaders,</i>	ūm
D. principibūs,	<i>to, for, leaders,</i>	ibūs
A. principēs,	<i>leaders,</i>	ēs
V. principēs,	<i>O leaders,</i>	ēs
A. principibūs,	<i>with, from, by, leaders,</i>	ibūs.

¹ M stands for *masculine*, F for *feminine*, and N for *neuter*.

1. STEM AND CASE-ENDINGS. — In this Paradigm observe that the stem is *prīncēp*, modified before an additional syllable to *prīncēp*, and that the case-endings are appended to the stem without change.

2. VARIABLE RADICAL VOWEL. — In the final syllable of dissyllabic consonant stems, short *e* or *i* generally takes the form of *ē* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., and that of *ī* in all the other cases. Thus *prīnceps*, *prīncipis*, and *jūdex*, *jūdicis* (59), both alike have *e* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., and *i* in all the other cases, though in *prīnceps*, the original form of the radical vowel is *e*, and in *jūdex* *i*.

58. STEMS ENDING IN A DENTAL : D or T.

Lapis, M., *stone*. Aetas, F., *age*. Miles, M., *soldier*.

SINGULAR.

N. <i>lāpīs</i>	<i>aetās</i>	<i>mīlēs</i>
G. <i>lapīdīs</i>	<i>aetātīs</i>	<i>mīltītīs</i>
D. <i>lapīdī</i>	<i>aetātī</i>	<i>mīltītī</i>
A. <i>lapīdēm</i>	<i>aetātēm</i>	<i>mīltītēm</i>
V. <i>lāpīs</i>	<i>aetās</i>	<i>mīlēs</i>
A. <i>lapīdē</i>	<i>aetātē</i>	<i>mīltītē</i>

PLURAL.

N. <i>lapīdēs</i>	<i>aetātēs</i>	<i>mīltētēs</i>
G. <i>lapīdūm</i>	<i>aetātūm</i>	<i>mīltītūm</i>
D. <i>lapīdībūs</i>	<i>aetātībūs</i>	<i>mīltītībūs</i>
A. <i>lapīdēs</i>	<i>aetātēs</i>	<i>mīltētēs</i>
V. <i>lapīdēs</i>	<i>aetātēs</i>	<i>mīltētēs</i>
A. <i>lapīdībūs</i>	<i>aetātībūs</i>	<i>mīltītībūs</i>

Nepos, M., *grandson*. Virtus, F., *virtue*. Caput, N., *head*.

SINGULAR.

N. <i>nēpōs</i>	<i>virtūs</i>	<i>cāpūt</i>
G. <i>nepōtīs</i>	<i>virtutīs</i>	<i>capūtīs</i>
D. <i>nepōtī</i>	<i>virtutī</i>	<i>capūtī</i>
A. <i>nepōtēm</i>	<i>virtutēm</i>	<i>capūt</i>
V. <i>nepōs</i>	<i>virtūs</i>	<i>capūt</i>
A. <i>nepōtē</i>	<i>virtutē</i>	<i>capūtē</i>

	PLURAL.	
N. nepōtēs	virtutēs	capitā
G. nepōtūm	virtutūm	capitūm
D. nepotībūs	virtutībūs	capitībūs
A. nepōtēs	virtutēs	capitā
V. nepōtēs	virtutēs	capitā
A. nepotībūs.	virtutībūs.	capitībūs.

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS. — In these Paradigms observe,

1) That the stems are *lāpīd*, *aetāt*, *mīlīt*, *nēpōt*, *virtūt*, and *cāpūt*.

2) That *mīlēs* has a variable vowel, *ē*, *ī*, and *cāpūt*, *ū*, *ī*.

3) That the dental *d* or *t* is dropped before *s*: *lāpis* for *lapids*, *aetās* for *aetats*, *mīlēs* for *mīlets*, *virtūs* for *virtuts*.

4) That the case-endings, except in the *neuter*, *cāpūt* (46, 2), are the same as those given above. See 57.

5) That *cāpūt* has no case-ending in the *Nom.*, *Acc.*, and *Voc. Sing.*, but has *ā* in the *Nom.*, *Acc.*, and *Voc. Plur.*

59. STEMS ENDING IN A GUTTURAL: **C** OR **G**.

Rex, M., <i>king.</i>	Judex, M. & F., <i>judge.</i>	Radix, F., <i>root.</i>	Dux, M. & F., <i>leader.</i>
--------------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------------	---------------------------------

SINGULAR.

N. rex	judex	rādix	dux
G. regī	judicīs	radicīs	ducīs
D. regī	judicī	radicī	ducī
A. regēm	judicēm	radicēm	ducēm
V. rex	judex	radix	dux
A. regē	judicē	radicē	ducē

PLURAL.

N. regēs	judicēs	radicēs	ducēs
G. regūm	judicūm	radicūm	ducūm
D. regībūs	judicībūs	radicībūs	ducībūs
A. regēs	judicēs	radicēs	ducēs
V. regēs	judicēs	radicēs	ducēs
A. regībūs.	judicībūs.	radicībūs.	ducībūs.

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS. — In the Paradigms, observe,

1) That the stems are *rēg*, *judic*, *rādix*, and *duc* — *judic* with the variable vowel — *ī*, *ē*. See 57, 2.

2) That the case-endings are those given in 57.

3) That **s** in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. unites with *c* or *g* of the stem, and forms *x*.

60. STEMS ENDING IN A LIQUID : L, M, N, OR R.

Sol, m., <i>sun.</i>	Consul, m., <i>consul.</i>	Passer, m., <i>sparrow.</i>	Pater, m., <i>father.</i>
-------------------------	-------------------------------	--------------------------------	------------------------------

SINGULAR.

N. <i>sōl</i>	consūl	passēr	pătēr
G. <i>sollis</i>	consūllis	passērīs	pătēris
D. <i>sollī</i>	consūllī	passērī	pătēri
A. <i>sollēm</i>	consūllēm	passērēm	pătēm
V. <i>sōl</i>	consūl	passēr	pătēr
A. <i>sollē</i>	consūllē	passērē	pătē

PLURAL.

N. <i>sollēs</i>	consūllēs	passērēs	pătēs
G. <i>sollūm</i>	consūllūm	passērūm	pătūm
D. <i>sollibūs</i>	consūllibūs	passērībūs	pătēribūs
A. <i>sollēs</i>	consūllēs	passērēs	pătēs
V. <i>sollēs</i>	consūllēs	passērēs	pătēs
A. <i>sollibūs.</i>	consūllibūs.	passērībūs.	pătēribūs.

Pastor, m., <i>shepherd.</i>	Leo, m., <i>lion.</i>	Virgo, f., <i>maiden.</i>	Carmen, n., <i>song.</i>
---------------------------------	--------------------------	------------------------------	-----------------------------

SINGULAR.

N. <i>pastōr</i>	leo	virgo	carmēn
G. <i>pastōris</i>	leōnis	virgīnis	carmīnis
D. <i>pastōrī</i>	leōnī	virgīnī	carmīnī
A. <i>pastōrēm</i>	leōnēm	virgīnēm	carmēn
V. <i>pastōr</i>	leo	virgo	carmēn
A. <i>pastōrē</i>	leōnē	virgīnē	carmīnē

PLURAL.

N. <i>pastōrēs</i>	leōnēs	virgīnēs	carmīnā
G. <i>pastōrūm</i>	leōnūm	virgīnūm	carmīnūm
D. <i>pastorībūs</i>	leonībūs	virginībūs	carminībūs
A. <i>pastōrēs</i>	leōnēs	virgīnēs	carmīnā
V. <i>pastōrēs</i>	leōnēs	virgīnēs	carmīnā
A. <i>pastorībūs.</i>	leonībūs.	virginībūs.	carminībūs.

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS. — In the Paradigms, observe,

1) That the stems are *sōl*, *consūl*, *passēr*, *pătēr*, *pastōr*, *leōn*, *virgōn*, and *carmēn*.

2) That *virgo* has the variable vowel, *ō*, *ī*; and *carmēn*, *ē*, *ī*.

3) That in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. **s**, the usual case-ending for masculine and feminine nouns, is omitted, and that in those cases the stem *pastōr* shortens **o**, while *leōn* and *virgōn* drop **n**.

61. STEMS ENDING IN **S**.

Flos, M., <i>flower.</i>	Jus, N., <i>right.</i>	Opus, N., <i>work.</i>	Corpus, N., <i>body.</i>
SINGULAR.—			
N. <i>flos</i>	<i>jūs</i>	<i>ōpūs</i>	<i>corpūs</i>
G. <i>flōris</i>	<i>jūrīs</i>	<i>opērīs</i>	<i>corpōrīs</i>
D. <i>flōri</i>	<i>jurī</i>	<i>opērī</i>	<i>corpōrī</i>
A. <i>flōrēm</i>	<i>jus</i>	<i>opūs</i>	<i>corpūs</i>
V. <i>flos</i>	<i>jus</i>	<i>opūs</i>	<i>corpūs</i>
A. <i>flōč</i>	<i>jurč</i>	<i>opērč</i>	<i>corpōrč</i>
PLURAL.			
N. <i>flōrēs</i>	<i>jurā</i>	<i>opērā</i>	<i>corpōrā</i>
G. <i>flōrūm</i>	<i>jurūm</i>	<i>opērūm</i>	<i>corpōrūm</i>
D. <i>flōribūs</i>	<i>jurībūs</i>	<i>operībūs</i>	<i>corporībūs</i>
A. <i>flōrēs</i>	<i>jurā</i>	<i>opērā</i>	<i>corpōrā</i>
V. <i>flōrēs</i>	<i>jurā</i>	<i>opērā</i>	<i>corpōrā</i>
A. <i>flōribūs.</i>	<i>jurībūs.</i>	<i>operībūs.</i>	<i>corporībūs.</i>

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS. — In the Paradigms observe,

1) That the stems are *flos*, *jūs*, *ōpūs*, and *corpūs*.

2) That *ōpūs* has the variable vowel, **ě**, **ū**, and *corpūs*, **ō**, **ū**.

3) That **s** of the stem becomes **r** between two vowels: *flos*, *flōris* (for *flōsis*).

4) That the Nominative and Vocative Singular omit the case-ending. See 60, 1, 3).

RULE XVI. — Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive: ¹

Cātōnis orātīōnes, *Cato's orations*. — Cic. *Castra hostium*, *the camp of the enemy*. — Liv. *Mors Hāmilcāris*, *the death of Hamilcar*. — Liv.

¹ The Appositive (363, p. 15) and this qualifying Genitive resemble each other in the fact that they both qualify the meaning of

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Cātōnis ōrātiōnēs, Cato's orations.

Cātōnis is a proper noun, as it is the name of a person (39, 1). It is of the Third Declension, as it has *is* in the Genitive Singular (47); of Class I., as its stem ends in a consonant (56, I.): STEM, *Cātōn*; Nom. *Cato* (*n* dropped). Singular:¹ *Cato, Cātōnis, Cātōni, Cātōnem, Cato, Cātōne*. It is of the Masculine gender, as the names of males are masculine by 42, I. 1. It is in the Genitive Singular, depending upon *ōrātiōnes*, according to Rule XVI.: "Any noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive."

EXERCISE VIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Cicērō, Cicērōnis, m.</i>	<i>Cicero, the Roman orator.</i>
<i>Constūl, consūllis, m.</i>	<i>consul.</i> ²
<i>Exsūl, exsūllis, m. and f.</i>	<i>exile.</i>
<i>Frāter, frātrīs, m.</i>	<i>brother.</i>
<i>Lex, lēgis, f.</i>	<i>law.</i>
<i>Nōmēn, nōmīnis, n.</i>	<i>name.</i>
<i>Ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, f.</i>	<i>oration, speech.</i>
<i>Ōrātōr, ōrātōris, m.</i>	<i>orator.</i>
<i>Victōr, victōris, m.</i>	<i>victor, conqueror.</i>

another noun: *Cluilius rex*, Cluilius the king; *Cātōnis ōrātiōnes*, Cato's orations, or the orations of Cato. Here the Appositive *rex* qualifies, or limits, the meaning of Cluilius, by showing *what* Cluilius is meant, — *Cluilius the king*: in a similar manner, the Genitive *Cātōnis* qualifies, or limits, the meaning of *ōrātiōnes*, by showing *what* orations are meant, — *the orations of Cato*. Yet the Appositive and the Genitive are readily distinguished by the fact that the former qualifies a noun denoting the *same* person or thing as itself, while the Genitive qualifies a noun denoting a *different* person or thing. Thus, in the examples above, *Cluilius* and the Appositive *rex* denote the *same* person; while *ōrātiōnes* and the Genitive *Cātōnis* denote entirely *different* objects.

¹ As *Cato* is the name of a person, the Plural is seldom used.

² The *consuls* were joint presidents of the Roman commonwealth. They were elected annually, and were two in number.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Princĭpis, princĭpum. 2. Princĭpem, princĭpes. 3. Miles, milites. 4. Militi, militibus. 5. Caput, capita. 6. Capite, capitibus. 7. Rex, reges. 8. Regis, regum. 9. Consŭli, consulibus. 10. Leo, leonis, leones. 11. Virgo, virginis, virgines. 12. Solis, solem, soles. 13. Solibus, consulibus. 14. Patri, pastori. 15. Patres, pastores. 16. Carmen, carmina. 17. Operis, corporis. 18. Ciceronis¹ oratio. 19. Ciceronis orationes. 20. Oratione consulis.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The exile, the exiles. 2. For the exile, for the exiles. 3. Of an exile, of the exiles. 4. The shepherd, the orator. 5. Of shepherds, of orators. 6. Shepherds, orators. 7. Of a shepherd, of an orator. 8. A song, a name. 9. Songs, names. 10. Of songs, of names. 11. Father, brother. 12. To the father, to the brother. 13. Kings, laws. 14. Of the king, of the law. 15. Of the kings, of the laws. 16. For the conqueror, of the conqueror. 17. The brother of the conqueror.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CLASS II. — I STEMS.

62. STEMS ENDING IN **I**. — *Nouns in is, — Abl. Sing. in ĭ, or in ĭ or ě.*

Tussis, F., <i>cough.</i>	Turris, F., <i>tower.</i>	Ignis, M., <i>fire.</i>	Case-Endings.
SINGULAR.			
N. tussis	turris	ignis	is
G. tussis	turris	ignis	is
D. tussĭ	turri	igni	i
A. tussim	turrim, ěm	igněm	im, ěm
V. tussis	turris	ignis	is
A. tussĭ	turri, ě	igni, ě	i, ě

¹ Ciceronis is in the Genitive, and qualifies the meaning of oratio, according to Rule XVI., 395.

PLURAL.

N. tussēs	turrēs	ignēs	ēs
G. tussiūm	turriūm	igniūm	iūm
D. tussiūs	turriūs	igniūs	ībūs
A. tussēs, is	turrēs, is	ignēs, is	ēs, is
V. tussēs	turrēs	ignēs	ēs
A. tussiūs.	turriūs.	igniūs.	ībūs.

1. PARADIGMS. — Observe,

- 1) That the stems are *tussi*, *turri*, and *igni*.
- 2) That the case-endings here given include the stem-ending *i*, which disappears in certain cases.
- 3) That these Paradigms differ in declension only in the Accusative and Ablative Singular.

63. STEMS ENDING IN **I**. — *Neuters in ě, al, and ar.*

Mare, sea.	Ānĭmāl, ānĭmāl.	Calcār, spur.	Case-Endings.
---------------	--------------------	------------------	---------------

SINGULAR.

N. mārĕ	ānĭmāl	calcār	ĕ— ¹
G. marĭs	ānĭmālĭs	calcārĭs	ĭs
D. marĭ	ānĭmālĭ	calcārĭ	ĭ
A. mārĕ	ānĭmāl	calcār	ĕ— ¹
V. marĕ	ānĭmāl	calcār	ĕ— ¹
A. marĭ	ānĭmālĭ	calcārĭ	ĭ

PLURAL.

N. mariā	ānĭmālĭā	calcārĭā	iā
G. mariūm	ānĭmālĭūm	calcārĭūm	iūm
D. mariūs	ānĭmālĭūs	calcārĭūs	ībūs
A. mariā	ānĭmālĭā	calcārĭā	iā
V. mariā	ānĭmālĭā	calcārĭā	iā
A. mariūs.	ānĭmālĭūs.	calcārĭūs.	ībūs.

1. PARADIGMS. — Observe,

- 1) That the stem-ending *i* is changed to *e* in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular of *māre*, and dropped in the same cases of *ānĭmāl* (for *ānĭmāle*) and *calcār* (for *calcāre*).
- 2) That the case-endings include the stem-ending *i*.

¹ The dash denotes that the case-ending is sometimes wanting.

64. STEMS ENDING IN **L** — Nouns in **is, es, and s** (**x**) preceded by a Consonant, — Abl. Sing. in **ě**.

Hostis, M. & F., Nubes, F., Urbs, F., Arx, F.,
enemy. cloud. city. citadel.

SINGULAR.

<i>N. hostis</i>	<i>nubēs</i>	<i>urbs</i>	<i>arx</i> ¹
<i>G. hostis</i>	<i>nubis</i>	<i>urbis</i>	<i>arcis</i>
<i>D. hosti</i>	<i>nubi</i>	<i>urbi</i>	<i>arci</i>
<i>A. hostēm</i>	<i>nubēm</i>	<i>urbēm</i>	<i>arcēm</i>
<i>V. hostis</i>	<i>nubēs</i>	<i>urbs</i>	<i>arx</i>
<i>A. hostě</i>	<i>nubě</i>	<i>urbě</i>	<i>arcě</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N. hostēs</i>	<i>nubēs</i>	<i>urbēs</i>	<i>arcēs</i>
<i>G. hostiūm</i>	<i>nubiūm</i>	<i>urbiūm</i>	<i>arciūm</i>
<i>D. hostibūs</i>	<i>nubibūs</i>	<i>urbibūs</i>	<i>arcibūs</i>
<i>A. hostēs, is</i>	<i>nubēs, is</i>	<i>urbēs, is</i>	<i>arcēs, is</i>
<i>V. hostēs</i>	<i>nubēs</i>	<i>urbēs</i>	<i>arcēs</i>
<i>A. hostibūs.</i>	<i>nubibūs.</i>	<i>urbibūs.</i>	<i>arcibūs.</i>

1. STEMS. — These Paradigms show a combination of i-stems and consonant stems: *hosti, host; urbi, urb; arci, arc*. The stem of *nubēs* seems to be *nubēs, nubi, nub*.

67. CASE-ENDINGS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

SINGULAR.

CONSONANT STEMS.		I-STEMS.	
<i>Masc. & Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. & Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. s —²</i>	<i>—²</i>	<i>is, es, s</i>	<i>ě —²</i>
<i>G. is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>
<i>D. i</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>i</i>
<i>A. ěm</i>	<i>—</i>	<i>im, ěm</i>	<i>ě —</i>
<i>V. s</i>	<i>—</i>	<i>is, es, s</i>	<i>ě —</i>
<i>A. ě</i>	<i>ě</i>	<i>i, ě</i>	<i>i</i>

¹ X in *arx = es*, — c belonging to the stem, and s being the Nominative ending.

² The dash denotes that the case-ending is wanting.

	PLURAL.		
N. ěs	ă	ěs	iă
G. ům	ům	iům	iům
D. ibůs	ibůs	ibůs	ibůs
A. ěs	ă	ěs, Is	iă
V. ěs	ă	ěs	iă
A. ibůs.	ibůs.	ibůs.	ibůs.

99. Nouns of the third declension in

o, or, os, er, and es increasing in the genitive,¹ are masculine: *sermo*, discourse; *dŏlŏr*, pain; *mŏs*, custom; *aggĕr*, mound; *pĕs*, genitive *pĕdis*, foot.

105. Nouns of the third declension in

as, is, ys, x, es not increasing in the genitive, and **s** preceded by a consonant, are feminine: *actās*, age; *nāvis*, ship; *chlāmŷs*, cloak; *pax*, peace; *nŭbĕs*, cloud; *urbs*, city.

111. Nouns of the third declension in

a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, and us, are neuter: *poĕmă*, poem; *măřĕ*, sea; *lăc*, milk; *ănimăl*, animal; *carmĕn*, song; *căpŭt*, head; *corpŭs*, body.

RULE XXXII.—Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions.²

Ad ħmĭcum scripsi, *I have written to a friend.* — Cic. In cŭri-

¹ That is, having more syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative.

² The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relations of objects to each other: *in Italia esse*, to be in Italy; *ante me*, before me. Here *in* and *ante* are prepositions. In the Vocabularies, each preposition, as it occurs, will be marked as such; and the case which may be used with it will be specified. It has not been thought advisable, at this early stage of the course, to burden the memory of the learner with a list of prepositions and their cases.

am, into the senate-house. — Liv. In Itāliā,¹ in Italy. — Nep. Pro castris, before the camp.

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Ad āmicūm, To a friend.

Amicum is a noun of the Second Declension (51), as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (47); STEM, *amicō* (51, 1). Singular: *amicus*, *amīci*, *amicō*, *amicum*, *amicē*, *amicō*. Plural: *amīci*, *amicōrum*, *amicis*, *amicos*, *amīci*, *amicis*. It is of the Masculine gender by 51, is in the Accusative Singular, and is used with the preposition *ad*, according to Rule XXXII.: "The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions." The Accusative is used with *ad*.

EXERCISE IX.

I. Vocabulary.

Ad, prep. with acc.	to, towards.
Avis, āvis, f.	bird.
Civis, civis, m. and f.	citizen.
Civitas, civitatis, f.	state.
Contrā, prep. with acc.	against, contrary to.
Mors, mortis, f.	death.
Pax, pacis, f.	peace.

II. Translate into English.

1. Nubis, nubium. 2. Nubem, nubes. 3. Avis, aves.
4. Avi, avibus. 5. Urbs, urbes. 6. Urbi, urbibus. 7. Nubēs, milēs.
8. Nubis, militis. 9. Nubem, militem.
10. Rex, judex. 11. Regis, judicis. 12. Reges, judices.
13. Civitas, civitates. 14. Virtus, virtutes. 15. Mors regis.
16. Morte regis. 17. Mortes regum. 18. Virtus judicis.
19. Pacis gloriā. 20. Ad gloriam.² 21. Contra regem.
22. Ad turrim. 23. Contra hostes.

¹ Here the Ablative *Italia* is used with *in*, though, in the second example, the Accusative *curiam* is used with the same preposition. The rule is, that the Latin preposition *in* is used with the Accusative when it means *into*, and with the Ablative when it means *in*.

² The Accusative *gloriam* is here used with the preposition *ad*, according to Rule XXXII. 432.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The citizen, to the citizen, of the citizen, of citizens, for citizens. 2. A cloud, clouds, of a cloud, of clouds, with a cloud, with clouds. 3. A king, a law. 4. Of fire, with fire. 5. Of the animal, for the animals. 6. The law of the state. 7. The laws of the state. 8. Contrary to¹ the law. 9. Contrary to the laws of the state. 10. By the death of the conqueror.

FOURTH DECLENSION. — U NOUNS.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in

ūs, — *masculine*; **ū**, — *neuter*.

They are declined as follows: —

Fructus, *fruit*. Cornu, *horn*. Case-Endings.

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> fruct ūs	corn ū	ūs	ū
<i>G.</i> fruct ūs	corn ūs	ūs	ūs
<i>D.</i> fruct uī	corn ū	uī	ū
<i>A.</i> fruct ūm	corn ū	ūm	ū
<i>V.</i> fruct ūs	corn ū	ūs	ū
<i>A.</i> fruct ū	corn ū	ū	ū

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> fruct ūs	corn uā	ūs	uā
<i>G.</i> fruct uūm	corn uūm	uūm	uūm
<i>D.</i> fruct ībūs	corn ībūs	ībūs (ūbūs) ¹	ībūs (ūbūs)
<i>A.</i> fruct ūs	corn uā	ūs	uā
<i>V.</i> fruct ūs	corn uā	ūs	uā
<i>A.</i> fruct ībūs .	corn ībūs .	ībūs (ūbūs).	ībūs (ūbūs).

1. STEM. — In nouns of the fourth declension the stem ends in **ū**: *fructū*, *cornū*.

2. CASE-ENDINGS. — The case-endings here given contain the stem-ending **ū**, weakened to *ī* in *ībūs*, but retained in *ūbūs*.

¹ See Rule XXXII. 432. The words *contrary to* are to be rendered by a single Latin preposition.

EXERCISE X.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Adventūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>arrival, approach.</i>
Antē, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>before.</i>
Caesār, Caesāris, <i>m.</i>	<i>Caesar, a Roman surname.</i>
Cantūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>singing, song.</i>
Conspectūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>sight, presence.</i>
Exercītūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>army.</i>
Hostis, hostis, <i>m. and f.</i>	<i>enemy.</i>
Impētūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>attack.</i>
In, <i>prep.</i>	<i>into with acc., in with abl.</i>
Lusciniā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>nightingale.</i>
Occāsūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>the setting, as of the sun.</i>
Post, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>after.</i>
Ver, vēris, <i>n.</i>	<i>spring.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Fructus, cantus. 2. Fructibus, cantibus. 3. Cantus lusciniæ.¹ 4. Cantu lusciniæ. 5. Cantibus lusciniarum. 6. Adventus veris. 7. Post adventum² veris.¹ 8. Solis occāsus. 9. Post solis occāsum. 10. Caesāris adventu. 11. Ante adventum Caesāris. 12. Impētus hostium. 13. Impētu hostium. 14. In conspectu exercītus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The army, the armies. 2. For the army, for the armies. 3. Of the army, of the armies. 4. The arrival of the army. 5. Before the arrival of the army. 6. After³

¹ Genitive, according to Rule XVI. See p. 21.

² Used with *post*, according to Rule XXXII. See p. 26.

³ See Rule XXXII. 432, p. 26. The pupil will remember that the English prepositions, *to, for, with, from, by*, are generally rendered into Latin by merely putting the noun in the proper case, i.e. in the Dative for *to* or *for*, and in the Ablative for *with, from, by*. Other English prepositions, *before, after, behind, between*, etc., are rendered into Latin by corresponding Latin prepositions.

the arrival of the consul. 7. The singing of the night-
ingale. 8. After the setting of the sun. 9. Before the
attack of the enemy. 10. After the attack of the enemy.
11. In¹ the city, into¹ the city, for the city. 12. In sight
of the king. 13. By the orations of Cicero. 14. Before
the death of the king. 15. After the death of Cicero, the
consul.

FIFTH DECLENSION. — E NOUNS.

120. Nouns of the fifth declension end in **ēs**, — *femi-
nine*, and are declined as follows: ² —

*Dies, day.*³ *Res, thing.* Case-Endings.

SINGULAR.		
<i>N. diēs</i>	rēs	ēs
<i>G. diēī</i>	rēī	eī
<i>D. diēī</i>	rēī	eī
<i>A. diēm</i>	rēm	ēm
<i>V. diēs</i>	rēs	ēs
<i>A. diē</i>	rē	e
PLURAL.		
<i>N. diēs</i>	rēs	ēs
<i>G. diērūm</i>	rērūm	ērūm
<i>D. diēbūs</i>	rēbūs	ēbūs
<i>A. diēs</i>	rēs	ēs
<i>V. diēs</i>	rēs	ēs
<i>A. diēbūs.</i>	rēbūs.	ēbūs.

1. STEM. — The stem of nouns of the fifth declension ends
in **ē**: *diē, re.*

2. CASE-ENDINGS. — The case-endings here given contain the
stem ending **ē**, which appears in all the cases. It is shortened

¹ See page 27, foot-note 1.

² But nouns of this declension, except *dies* and *res*, want the
Genitive, Dative, and Ablative plural; and many admit no plural
whatever.

³ *Dies*, day, is an exception in gender, as it is generally *mascu-
line*, though sometimes *feminine* in the singular.

(1) in the ending *eī*,¹ when preceded by a consonant, and (2) in the ending *ēm*.

EXERCISE XI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Acies, ācieī, f.</i>	<i>battle-array, army.</i>
<i>Amicus, i, m.</i>	<i>friend.</i>
<i>Cibus, i, m.</i>	<i>food.</i>
<i>Dē, prep. with abl.</i>	<i>concerning.</i>
<i>Dies, dieī, m. and f.</i>	<i>day.</i>
<i>Facies, faciēī, f.</i>	<i>face, appearance.</i>
<i>Numerus, i, m.</i>	<i>number, quantity.</i>
<i>Res, rei, f.</i>	<i>thing, affair.</i>
<i>Species, specieī, f.</i>	<i>appearance.</i>
<i>Spes, speī, f.</i>	<i>hope.</i>
<i>Victoria, ae, f.</i>	<i>victory.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Dieī, dierum, diebus.* 2. *Acieī, aciem, acie.* 3. *Diem, speciem.* 4. *Die, specie.* 5. *Res, spes.* 6. *Rei, spei.* 7. *Victoriae spes.* 8. *Victoriae spe.* 9. *Dieī horae.* 10. *Numerus dierum.* 11. *Gloria, cibus, nubes, cantus, facies.* 12. *Gloriae, cibi, nubis, cantus, facieī.* 13. *Gloriam, cibum, nubem, cantum, faciem.* 14. *De victoria, in mare, ad consulem.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A day, days. 2. Of the day, of the days. 3. For the day, for the days. 4. The thing, the things. 5. With the thing, with the things. 6. Concerning the thing, concerning the things. 7. Of the thing, of the things. 8. Concerning the battle-array. 9. Wisdom, friend, citizen, fruit, hope. 10. For wisdom, for a citizen, for hope.

¹ The learner will notice that *e* in the ending *eī* is long in *dieī*, where it is preceded by a vowel, but short in *rei*, where it is preceded by a consonant. In both instances, however, the *e* belongs to the stem.

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

146. THE adjective is that part of speech which is used to qualify nouns: *bōnus*, good: *magnus*, great.

The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies: *bōnus puer*, a good boy; *bona puella*, a good girl; *bonum tectum*, a good house. Thus *bonus* is the form of the adjective when used with masculine nouns, *bona* with feminine, and *bonum* with neuter.

147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension, and partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the third declension.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

A AND O STEMS.

148. Bōnus, good.

SINGULAR.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	bōnūs	bōnā	bōnūm
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i>	bonūm	bonām	bonūm
<i>Voc.</i>	bonē	bonā	bonūm
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō;
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonā
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrūm	bonārūm	bonōrūm
<i>Dat.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bonā
<i>Voc.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonā
<i>Abl.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs.

1. BONUS is declined in the Masc. like *servus* of Decl. II. (51), in the Fem. like *mensa* of Decl. I. (48), and in the Neut. like *templum*

of Decl. II. (51). The stems are *bōno* in the Masc. and Neut., and *bōna* in the Fem.

149. *Liber, free.*

SINGULAR.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>libēr</i>	<i>libērā</i>	<i>libērūm</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>libērī</i>	<i>libērae</i>	<i>libērī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>libērō</i>	<i>libērae</i>	<i>libērō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>libērūm</i>	<i>libērām</i>	<i>libērūm</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>libēr</i>	<i>libērā</i>	<i>libērūm</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>libērō</i>	<i>libērā</i>	<i>libērō</i> ;
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>libērī</i>	<i>libērae</i>	<i>libērā</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>libērōrūm</i>	<i>libērārūm</i>	<i>libērōrūm</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>libērīs</i>	<i>libērīs</i>	<i>libērīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>libērōs</i>	<i>libērās</i>	<i>libērā</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>libērī</i>	<i>libērae</i>	<i>libērā</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>libērīs</i>	<i>libērīs</i>	<i>libērīs.</i>

1. **LIBER** is declined in the Masc. like *puer* (51), and in the Fem. and Neut. like *bōnus*.

150. *Aeger, sick.*

SINGULAR.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>aegēr</i>	<i>aegrā</i>	<i>aegrūm</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegrae</i>	<i>aegrī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aegrō</i>	<i>aegrae</i>	<i>aegrō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>aegrūm</i>	<i>aegrām</i>	<i>aegrūm</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>aeger</i>	<i>aegrā</i>	<i>aegrūm</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>aegrō</i>	<i>aegrā</i>	<i>aegrō</i> ;
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegrae</i>	<i>aegrā</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>aegrōrūm</i>	<i>aegrārūm</i>	<i>aegrōrūm</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>aegrōs</i>	<i>aegrās</i>	<i>aegrā</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegrae</i>	<i>aegrā</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs.</i>

I. (51), in
e *templum*

1. AEGER is declined in the Masc. like *āger* (51), and in the Fem. and Neut. like *bōnus*.

RULE XXXIII. — Agreement of Adjectives.

438. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE:

*Fortūna caeca est, Fortune is blind.*¹ — Cic. *Vērae amicitiae, true friendships.* — Cic. *Māgister optimus, the best teacher.* — Cic.

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Vērae amicitiae, True friendships.

Verae is an adjective (146) of the First and Second Declensions (147): STEM, *vera* (148, 1). Singular: N. *verus, verā, verum*; G. *veri, verae, veri*; D. *vero, verae, verō*; A. *verum, veram, verum*; V. *vere, verā, verum*; A. *vero, verā, vero*. Plural: N. *veri, verae, vera*; G. *verōrum, verārum, verōrum*; D. *veris, veris, veris*; A. *veros, veras, vera*; V. *veri, verae, vera*; A. *veris, veris, veris*. It is in the Nominative Plural Feminine, and agrees with its noun *amicitiae*, according to Rule XXXIII: "An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE."

EXERCISE XII.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>Annūlūs, ī, m.</i>	<i>ring.</i>
<i>Aureūs, ā, ūm,</i> ²	<i>golden.</i>
<i>Beātūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>happy, blessed.</i>
<i>Bōnūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>good.</i>
<i>Egrēgiūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>distinguished.</i>
<i>Fidūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>faithful.</i>
<i>Grātūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>acceptable, pleasing.</i>
<i>Magnūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>great.</i>

¹ Here the adjective *caeca* is in the feminine gender, in the singular number, and in the nominative case, to agree with *fortūna*. It is declined like *BONUS*: *caecus, caeca, caecum*.

² The endings *a* and *um* belong respectively to the feminine and to the neuter. Thus *aureus, aurea, aureum*, like *bonus*, 148.

Multiſ, ă, ūm,	<i>much, many.</i>
Puellă, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>girl.</i>
Pulchĕr, pulchră, pulchrŭm,	<i>beautiful.</i>
Rĕgină, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>queen.</i>
Rĕgnŭm, i, <i>n.</i>	<i>kingdom.</i>
Vĕrŭs, ă, ūm,	<i>true.</i>
Vită, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>life.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Amīcus fidus.¹ 2. Amīci fidi. 3. Amīco fido. 4. Amīcum fidum. 5. Amīce fide. 6. Amīcōrum fidōrum. 7. Amīcis fidis. 8. Amīcos fidos. 9. Corōnă aureă. 10. Corōnæ aureæ. 11. Corōnam auream. 12. Corōnă aureă. 13. Coronārum aureārum. 14. Corōnis aureis. 15. Corōnas aureas. 16. Donum gratum. 17. Doni grati. 18. Dono grato. 19. Dona grata. 20. Donōrum gratōrum. 21. Donis gratis. 22. Ager pulcher. 23. Puellă pulchră. 24. Donum pulchrum. 25. Agri pulchri. 26. Puellæ pulchrae. 27. Dona pulchra. 28. Beătă vită. 29. Aureus annŭlus. 30. Aurei annŭli. 31. Magnă gloriă. 32. Egregiă victoriă.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A true² friend. 2. The true² friends. 3. For a true friend. 4. For true friends. 5. Of the true friend. 6. Of true friends. 7. True glory. 8. With true glory. 9. Of true glory. 10. An acceptable word. 11. Acceptable words. 12. With acceptable words. 13. Of acceptable

¹ In Latin the adjective generally follows its noun, as in this example; though sometimes it precedes it, as in English. When emphatic, the adjective is placed before its noun; as, *Verae amicitiae*, true friendships. *Fidus* agrees with *amicus*, according to Rule XXXIII.

² Be sure and put the adjective in the right form to agree with its noun, according to Rule XXXIII.

words. 14. A beautiful book. 15. The beautiful books. 16. With a beautiful book. 17. Of beautiful books. 18. The beautiful queen. 19. The crown of the beautiful queen. 20. The beautiful crown of the queen. 21. A good king, a good queen, a good kingdom. 22. The brothers of the good king.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CONSONANT AND I STEMS.

152. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes : —

I. Those which have in the nominative singular three different forms, one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms; the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form, the same for all genders.

153. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS in this declension have the stem in *i*, and are declined as follows : —

Acer, sharp.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ācēr	ūcrīs	ācrē
<i>Gen.</i>	acrīs	acrīs	acrīs
<i>Dat.</i>	acrī	acrī	acrī
<i>Acc.</i>	acrēm	acrēm	acrē
<i>Voc.</i>	acēr	acrīs	acrē
<i>Abl.</i>	acrī	acrī	acrī;

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	acrēs	acrēs	acriā
<i>Gen.</i>	acriūm	acriūm	acriūm
<i>Dat.</i>	acribūs	acribūs	acribūs
<i>Acc.</i>	acrēs, is	acrēs, is	acriā
<i>Voc.</i>	acrēs	acrēs	acriā
<i>Abl.</i>	acribūs	acribūs	acribūs.

154. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS are declined as follows:—

Tristis, sad.

Tristior, more sad.

SINGULAR.

<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. tristis</i>	<i>tristĕ</i>	<i>N. tristior</i>	<i>tristiūs</i>
<i>G. tristis</i>	<i>tristis</i>	<i>G. tristioris</i>	<i>tristioris</i>
<i>D. tristī</i>	<i>tristī</i>	<i>D. tristiorī</i>	<i>tristiorī</i>
<i>A. tristēm</i>	<i>tristĕ</i>	<i>A. tristiorēm</i>	<i>tristiūs</i>
<i>V. tristis</i>	<i>tristĕ</i>	<i>V. tristior</i>	<i>tristiūs</i>
<i>A. tristī</i>	<i>tristī;</i>	<i>A. tristiorĕ (ī)</i>	<i>tristiorĕ (ī);</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N. tristēs</i>	<i>tristiā</i>	<i>N. tristiorēs</i>	<i>tristorā</i>
<i>G. tristīum</i>	<i>tristiūm</i>	<i>G. tristiorūm</i>	<i>tristorūm</i>
<i>D. tristībūs</i>	<i>tristībūs</i>	<i>D. tristiorībūs</i>	<i>tristorībūs</i>
<i>A. tristēs, is</i>	<i>tristiā</i>	<i>A. tristiorēs</i>	<i>tristorā</i>
<i>V. tristēs</i>	<i>tristiā</i>	<i>V. tristiorēs</i>	<i>tristorā</i>
<i>A. tristībūs</i>	<i>tristībūs.</i>	<i>A. tristiorībūs</i>	<i>tristorībūs.</i>

155. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING generally end in *s* or *x*, sometimes in *l* or *r*, and are declined, in the main, like nouns of the same endings.

156. *Audax, audacious.*

Felix, happy.

SINGULAR.

<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. audax</i>	<i>audax</i>	<i>N. felix</i>	<i>felix</i>
<i>G. audācis</i>	<i>audācis</i>	<i>G. felicis</i>	<i>felicis</i>
<i>D. audācī</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>D. felicī</i>	<i>felicī</i>
<i>A. audācēm</i>	<i>audax</i>	<i>A. felicēm</i>	<i>felix</i>
<i>V. audax</i>	<i>audax</i>	<i>V. felix</i>	<i>felix</i>
<i>A. audācī (ĕ)</i>	<i>audācī (ĕ);</i>	<i>A. felicī (ĕ)</i>	<i>felicī (ĕ);</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N. audācēs</i>	<i>audaciā</i>	<i>N. felicēs</i>	<i>feliciā</i>
<i>G. audaciūm</i>	<i>audaciūm</i>	<i>G. felicīum</i>	<i>felicīum</i>
<i>D. audaciībūs</i>	<i>audaciībūs</i>	<i>D. felicībūs</i>	<i>felicībūs</i>
<i>A. audācēs (īs)</i>	<i>audaciā</i>	<i>A. felicēs (īs)</i>	<i>feliciā</i>
<i>V. audācēs</i>	<i>audaciā</i>	<i>V. felicēs</i>	<i>feliciā</i>
<i>A. audaciībūs</i>	<i>audaciībūs.</i>	<i>A. felicībūs</i>	<i>felicībūs.</i>

157. Amans, *loving*.Prudens, *prudent*.

SINGULAR.

<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> amans	amans	<i>N.</i> prudens	prudens
<i>G.</i> amantis	amantis	<i>G.</i> prudentis	prudentis
<i>D.</i> amanti	amanti	<i>D.</i> prudenti	prudenti
<i>A.</i> amantem	amans	<i>A.</i> prudentem	prudens
<i>V.</i> amans	amans	<i>V.</i> prudens	prudens
<i>A.</i> amantē (ī)	amantē (ī);	<i>A.</i> prudenti (ē)	prudenti (ē);

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> amantēs	amantiā	<i>N.</i> prudentēs	prudentiā
<i>G.</i> amantiūm	amantiūm	<i>G.</i> prudentiūm	prudentiūm
<i>D.</i> amantiūs	amantiūs	<i>D.</i> prudentiūs	prudentiūs
<i>A.</i> amantēs (īs)	amantiā	<i>A.</i> prudentēs (īs)	prudentiā
<i>V.</i> amantēs	amantiā	<i>V.</i> prudentēs	prudentiā
<i>A.</i> amantiūs	amantiūs.	<i>A.</i> prudentiūs	prudentiūs.

EXERCISE XIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Acēr, acris, acrē,	<i>sharp, severe.</i>
Animāl, animālis, n.	<i>animal.</i>
Brēvis, ē,	<i>short, brief.</i>
Crūdēlis, ē,	<i>cruel.</i>
Dōlōr, dōlōris, m.	<i>pain, grief.</i>
Dux, dūcis, m.	<i>leader.</i>
Fertilis, ē,	<i>fertile.</i>
Fortis, ē,	<i>brave.</i>
Nāvālis, ē,	<i>naval.</i>
Omnis, ē,	<i>every, all, whole.</i>
Pugnā, ae, f.	<i>battle.</i>
Sāpiens, sāpientis,	<i>wise.</i>
Singūlaris, ē,	<i>singular, remarkable.</i>
Utilis, ē,	<i>useful.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Dolor acer. 2. Dolōres acres. 3. Lex acris. 4. Legibus acribus. 5. Hostis crudēlis. 6. Hostem crudē-

lem. 7. Miles fortis. 8. Virtus militis¹ fortis. 9. Virtute militum¹ fortium. 10. Ager fertilis. 11. In agro fertili. 12. Agros fertiles. 13. In agris fertilibus. 14. Post vitam brevem. 15. Pugnae navales. 16. Post pugnas navales. 17. Singularis virtus. 18. Singulari virtute. 19. Omne animal. 20. Omnia animalia.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. A useful citizen. 2. Of useful citizens. 3. For a useful citizen. 4. For useful citizens. 5. Of a useful citizen. 6. The wise judge. 7. Wise judges. 8. For the wise judge. 9. For wise judges. 10. Brave soldiers. 11. For brave soldiers. 12. A brave soldier. 13. Of the brave soldier. 14. The brave leader. 15. Brave leaders. 16. The word of the brave leader. 17. By the words of the brave leader.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

160. Adjectives have three forms, called the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative degree: *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*,² high, higher, highest. These forms denote different degrees of the quality expressed by the adjective.

161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison:—

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON, by endings.

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON, by adverbs.

¹ Genitive, according to Rule XVI.

² Each of these forms of the adjective is declined. Thus *altus* and *altissimus* are declined like *bonus*, 148: *altus*, *a*, *um*; *alti*, *ae*, *i*, etc.; *altissimus*, *a*, *um*; *altissimi*, *ae*, *i*, etc. *Altior* is declined like *tristior*, 154: *altior*, *altius*; *altioris*, etc.

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings:—

COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
iōr,	iōr,	iūs.	issimūs,	issimā,	issimūm:

Altus, altior, altissimus: *high, higher, highest.*

lēvis, levior, levissimus: *light, lighter, lightest.*

1. VOWEL STEMS lose their final vowel: *alto, altior, altissimus.*

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs, *māgis*, more, and *maxīme*, most, to the positive:—

Arduus, māgis arduus, maxīme arduus,

Arduous, more arduous, most arduous.

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Orātōr clāriōr, *A more renowned orator.*

Clarior is an adjective (146) in the Comparative degree (160, 162), from the positive *clarus*. Positive, *clārus*; STEM, *clāro*; Comparative, *clarior*; Superlative, *clarissimus*. *Clarior* is an adjective of the Third Declension, declined like *tristior* (154). Singular: N. *clarior, clarius*; G. *clariōris, clariōris*, etc.¹ It is in the Nominative Singular Masculine, and agrees with its noun *orātōr*, according to Rule XXXIII.²

EXERCISE XIV.

I. Vocabulary.

Altūs, ā, ūm,	<i>high, lofty.</i>
Clārūs, ā, ūm,	<i>distinguished, renowned.</i>
Intēr, prep. with acc.	<i>among, in the midst of.</i>
Mons, montīs, m.	<i>mountain.</i>

¹ Decline through all the cases of both numbers.

² Give the Rule.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Orātor clarus. 2. Orātor clarior.¹ 3. Orātor clarissimus. 4. Oratōres clari. 5. Oratōres clariōres.¹ 6. Oratōres clarissimi. 7. Beāta vita. 8. Beatior vita. 9. Beattissima vita. 10. Donum gratum. 11. Donum gratius. 12. Donum gratissimum. 13. Dona grata. 14. Dona gratiōra. 15. Dona gratissima. 16. Milītes fortissimi. 17. Liber utilis. 18. Libri utliōres. 19. Libris utilissimis. 20. Mons altus. 21. Montes altiōres.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A fertile field. 2. A more fertile field. 3. The most fertile field. 4. Fertile fields. 5. More fertile fields. 6. A useful life. 7. A more useful life. 8. The most useful life. 9. Useful lives. 10. More useful lives. 11. The most useful lives. 12. A pleasing song. 13. A more pleasing song. 14. The most pleasing song.

NUMERALS.

171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.

172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes:—

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS :² *ūnus*, one ; *duo*, two.
2. ORDINAL NUMBERS :² *prīmus*, first ; *secundus*, second.
3. DISTRIBUTIVES :² *singūli*, one by one ; *bīni*, two by two, two each, two apiece.

¹ Declined like *tristior*, 154. Comparatives and superlatives, as well as positives, must agree with their nouns, according to Rule XXXIII., p. 34.

² *Cardinals* denote simply the *number* of objects: *ūnus*, one; *duo*, two. *Ordinals* denote the *place* of an object in a *series*: *prīmus*, first; *secundus*, second. *Distributives* denote the *number* of objects taken at a time: *singūli*, one by one; *bīni*, two by two.

174. TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
1. ūnūs, unā, unūm,	prīmūs, <i>first</i> ,	singūli, <i>one by one.</i>
2. duō, duae, duō,	sēcundūs, <i>second</i> ,	binī, <i>two by two.</i>
3. trēs, triā,	tertīūs, <i>third</i> ,	ternī (trīnī).
4. quattuōr,	quartūs, <i>fourth</i> ,	quāternī.
5. quinquē,	quintūs, <i>fifth</i> ,	quīnī.
6. sex,	sextūs,	sēnī.
7. septēm,	septīmūs,	septēnī.
8. octō,	octāvūs,	octōnī.
9. nōvem,	nōnūs,	nōvēnī.
10. dēcēm,	dēcīmūs,	dēnī.
11. undēcīm,	undēcīmūs,	undēnī.
12. duōdēcīm,	duōdēcīmūs,	duōdēnī.
13. trēdēcīm, or dēcēm et trēs,	tertīūs dēcīmūs,	ternī dēnī.
20. vigintī,	vicēsīmūs,	vicēnī.
21. { vigintī ūnūs,	vicēsīmūs prīmūs,	vicēnī singlī.
{ ūnūs et vigintī,	ūnūs et vicēsīmūs,	singūli et vicēnī.
30. trīgintā,	tricēsīmūs,	tricēnī.
40. quadrāgintā,	quadrāgēsīmūs,	quadrāgēnī.
50. quinquāgintā,	quīnquāgēsīmūs,	quīnquāgēnī.
100. centūm,	centēsīmūs,	centēnī.
200. dūcentī, ae, ā,	dūcentēsīmūs,	dūcēnī.
1000. millē,	millēsīmūs,	singlā millī.

DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

175. The first three cardinals are declined as follows: —

Unus, *one*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. ūnūs	ūnā	ūnūm	ūnī	ūnae	ūnā	
G. unīūs	unīūs	unīūs	unōrūm	unārūm	unōrūm	
D. unī	unī	unī	unīs	unīs	unīs	
A. unūm	unām	unūm	unōs	unās	unā	
V. unē	unā	unūm	unī	unae	unā	
A. unō	unā	unō;	unīs	unīs	unīs.	

Duo, *two*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. duō	duae	duō	trēs, <i>m. and f.</i>	triā, <i>n.</i>		
G. duōrūm	duārūm	duōrūm	triūm	triūm		
D. duōbūs	duābūs	duōbūs	tribūs	tribūs		
A. duōs, duō	duās	duō	trēs, trīs	triā		
V. duō	duae	duō	trēs	triā		
A. duōbus	duābūs	duōbūs.	tribūs	tribūs.		

Tres, *three*.17
clina
17
the p1.
Liber
Tria
10. A
bellu
mus
Decem
decim1.
4. T
presen
eighth
very c1 N
tives.
2 T
change
3 D

176. The cardinals from *quattuor* to *centum* are indeclinable.

177. Hundreds, *dūcenti*, *trēcenti*, etc., are declined like the plural of *bōnus*: *ducenti*, *ae*, *a*.

EXERCISE XV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Annūs, i, m.	year.
Classis, classis, f.	fleet.
Fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f.	fortitude, bravery.
Impēriūm, ii, n.	reign, power.
Nāvis, nāvis, f.	ship.
Proeliūm, ii, n.	battle.
Vīr, vīri, m.	man, hero.

II. *Translate into English.*

- Unus¹ liber.
- Duo¹ libri.
- Liber primus.¹
- Liber secundus.
- Tres libri.
- Tertius liber.
- Tria bella.
- Post tria bella.
- Post tertium bellum.
- Ante quartum bellum.
- Quattuor² anni.
- Post bellum quinque annōrum.
- Decem² dies.
- Decimus dies.³
- Decem horae.
- Decīma hora.
- Decem proelia.
- Decīmum proelium.
- Horā diēi decimā.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

- Five friends.
- Of five friends.
- The fifth year.
- The fifth day.
- The fifth present.
- With five presents.
- Eight books.
- With eight books.
- The eighth book.
- Before the eighth book.
- The bravery of two soldiers.
- By the bravery of two soldiers.

¹ Numeral adjectives agree with their nouns, like other adjectives.

² The indeclinable numeral adjectives (176) may be used without change of form with nouns of any gender and in any case.

³ *Dies*, it will be remembered, is generally *masculine*.

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

182. THE PRONOUN is the part of speech which supplies the place of nouns: *ĕgō*, I; *tū*, thou.

183. Pronouns are divided into six classes: —

1. Personal Pronouns: *tū*, thou.
2. Possessive Pronouns: *meus*, my.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns: *hīc*, this.
4. Relative Pronouns: *quī*, who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns: *quīs*, who?
6. Indefinite Pronouns: *āliquīs*, some one.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

184. Personal Pronouns, so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are, —

Ego, I.	Tu, thou.	Sui, of himself, etc. ¹
	SINGULAR.	

Nom. <i>ĕgō</i>	tū	
Gen. <i>meī</i>	tuī	suī
Dat. <i>mihī</i>	tībī	sībī
Acc. <i>mē</i>	tē	sē
Voc.	tū	
Abl. <i>mē</i> ;	tē ;	sē ;

PLURAL.

Nom. <i>nōs</i>	vōs	
Gen. <i>nostrūm</i> }	vestrūm }	suī
nostrī }	vestrī }	
Dat. <i>nōbis</i>	vōbis	sībī
Acc. <i>nōs</i>	vōs	sē
Voc.	vōs	
Abl. <i>nōbis</i> .	vōbis.	sē.

4. Personal Pronouns are also called *Substantive* pronouns, because they are always used as substantives.

¹ *Of himself, herself, itself.* The Nominative is not used.

5. *Sui*, from its reflexive signification, of *himself*, etc., is often called the *Reflexive* pronoun.

II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

185. From Personal Pronouns are formed the *Possessives*: —

meūs, ā, ūm, *my*; nostēr, trā, trūm, *our*;
tuus, a, um, *thy, your*; vester, tra, trum, *your*;
suus, a, um, *his, her, its*; suus, a, um, *their*.

1. Possessives are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions; but *meus* has in the Vocative Singular, Masculine, generally *mī*, sometimes *meus*.

III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

186. Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are, —

Hīc, istē, illē, is, ipsē, idem.

They are declined as follows, —

I. *Hic, this.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N. hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>G. hujūs</i>	<i>hujūs</i>	<i>hujūs</i>	<i>hōrūm</i>	<i>hārūm</i>	<i>hōrūm</i>
<i>D. huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>
<i>A. hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i> ¹	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>A. hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i> ;	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his.</i>

II. *Istē, that, that of yours.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N. istē</i>	<i>istā</i>	<i>istūd</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istae</i>	<i>istā</i>
<i>G. istiūs</i>	<i>istiūs</i>	<i>istiūs</i>	<i>istōrūm</i>	<i>istarūm</i>	<i>istōrūm</i>
<i>D. istī</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>
<i>A. istūm</i>	<i>istām</i>	<i>istūd</i> ¹	<i>istōs</i>	<i>istās</i>	<i>istā</i>
<i>A. istō</i>	<i>istā</i>	<i>istō</i> ;	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs.</i>

III. *Illē, he or that, is declined like istē.*

¹ The Vocative is wanting in Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns.

IV. *Is, he, this, that.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>Is</i>	<i>eū</i>	<i>Id</i>	<i>ei, ii</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>eā</i>
G. <i>ejūs</i>	<i>ejūs</i>	<i>ejūs</i>	<i>eōrūm</i>	<i>eārūm</i>	<i>eōrūm</i>
D. <i>ei</i>	<i>ei</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>
A. <i>eūm</i>	<i>eām</i>	<i>Id</i> ¹	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>eā</i>
A. <i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i> ;	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs.</i>

V. *Ipsē, self, he.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>ipsē</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsūm</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsā</i>
G. <i>ipsiūs</i>	<i>ipsiūs</i>	<i>ipsiūs</i>	<i>ipsōrūm</i>	<i>ipsārūm</i>	<i>ipsōrūm</i>
D. <i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>
A. <i>ipsūm</i>	<i>ipsām</i>	<i>ipsūm</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsā</i>
A. <i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i> ;	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis.</i>

VI. *Idem, the same.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>idēm</i> ²	<i>eādēm</i>	<i>idēm</i>	{ <i>eidēm</i> <i>iidēm</i>	<i>eaidēm</i>	<i>eādēm</i>
G. <i>ejudēm</i>	<i>ejudēm</i>	<i>ejudēm</i>		<i>eōrundēm</i>	<i>eārundēm</i>
D. <i>eidēm</i>	<i>eidēm</i>	<i>eidēm</i>	{ <i>eisdēm</i> <i>iisdēm</i>	<i>eisdēm</i>	<i>eisdēm</i>
A. <i>eundēm</i>	<i>eandēm</i>	<i>idēm</i>		<i>eosdēm</i>	<i>easdēm</i>
A. <i>eōdēm</i>	<i>eādēm</i>	<i>eōdēm</i> ;	{ <i>eisdēm</i> <i>iisdēm</i>	<i>eisdēm</i>	<i>eisdēm</i>
				<i>iisdēm</i>	<i>iisdēm</i>

IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

187. The Relative *qui*, who, so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows: —

¹ The Vocative is wanting in Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns.

² *Idem*, compounded of *is* and *dem*, is declined like *is*, but shortens *isdēm* to *idēm*, and *iddēm* to *idēm*, and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *dem*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> qui	quae	quōd	quī	quae	quae
<i>G.</i> cuiūs	cuiūs	cuiūs	quōrūm	quārūm	quōrūm
<i>D.</i> cui	cui	cui	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs
<i>A.</i> quēm	quām	quōd	quōs	quās	quae
<i>A.</i> quō	quā	quō;	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs.

V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

188. Interrogative Pronouns are used in asking questions. The most important are, —

Quīs and *quī* with their compounds.

I. *Quis, who, which, what?*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> quīs	quae	quīd	quī	quae	quae
<i>G.</i> cuiūs	cuiūs	cuiūs	quōrūm	quārūm	quōrūm
<i>D.</i> cui	cui	cui	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs
<i>A.</i> quēm	quām	quīd	quōs	quās	quae
<i>A.</i> quō	quā	quō;	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs.

II. *Quī, which, what?* is declined like the *relative qui*.

VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite persons or things. The most important are, —

Quīs and *quī*, with their compounds.

190. *Quis*, any one, and *qui*, any one, any, are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *qui*. But

1. After *sī, nīst, nē*, and *nūm*, the Feminine Singular and Neuter Plural have *quae* or *quā*: *si quae, si quā*.

EXERCISE XVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Consiliūm, ii, *n.*

design, plan.

Epistōlā, ae, *f.*

letter.

<i>Ex, prep. with abl.</i>	<i>from.</i>
<i>Insulā, ae, f.</i>	<i>island.</i>
<i>Pārens, pārentis, m. and f.</i>	<i>parent.</i>
<i>Pars, partis, f.</i>	<i>part, portion.</i>
<i>Pātriā, ae, f.</i>	<i>country, native country.</i>
<i>Praeclārūs, ū, ūm,</i>	<i>distinguished.</i>
<i>Prātūm, i, n.</i>	<i>meadow.</i>
<i>Prō, prep. with abl.</i>	<i>for, in behalf of.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Mihi, tibi, sibi. 2. Ad me,¹ ad te. 3. Contra nos, contra se. 4. Ante vos, ante nos. 5. Pro vobis.¹ 6. Meū² vitā. 7. Patriā tuā. 8. Pro patriā tuā.² 9. Contra patriam tuam. 10. Nostra consilia. 11. Nostris² consiliis. 12. Vestri patres. 13. In nostrā patriā. 14. Hic² puer, hi puēri. 15. Haec corōnā, hae corōnae. 16. Hoc donum, haec dona. 17. Haec urbs praeclārā. 18. Ex hac vitā. 19. Illius libri. 20. In eā pugnā. 21. In eōdem prato. 22. Quae² urbs?

III. Translate into Latin.

1. We, you. 2. You, me, himself. 3. For you, for me, for himself. 4. Of himself, of you. 5. Against you, against me. 6. My book, your book, his book. 7. My books, your books, his books. 8. Our parents, your parents, their parents. 9. This letter, that letter. 10. These letters, those letters. 11. This city, that city. 12. These cities, those cities. 13. After that victory. 14. The same words. 15. With the same words.

¹ See 184, 4. Substantive pronouns are used in the several cases like nouns, and are parsed by the same rules.

² The *Possessive*, the *Demonstrative*, and the *Interrogative* Pronouns, in this exercise, are all used as *adjectives*, and agree with their nouns, like any other adjectives, according to Rule XXXIII. 438, p. 34.

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

192. VERBS in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action: *est*, he is; *dormit*, he is sleeping; *lęgit*, he reads.

193. Verbs comprise two principal classes: —

I. TRANSITIVE VERBS, which admit a direct object of their action: *servum*¹ *verbęrat*, he beats the slave.

II. INTRANSITIVE VERBS, which do not admit such an object: *puer currit*, the boy runs.

194. Verbs have *Voice*, *Mood*, *Tense*, *Number*, and *Person*.

I. VOICES.

195. There are two Voices: ²—

I. THE ACTIVE VOICE, which represents the subject as acting or existing: *păter filium amat*, the father loves his son; *est*, he is.

II. THE PASSIVE VOICE, which represents the subject as acted upon by some other person or thing: *filius a patre amătur*, the son is loved by his father.

II. MOODS.

196. Moods ³ are either Definite or Indefinite, —

I. THE DEFINITE or FINITE MOODS make up the finite verb. They are, —

1. THE INDICATIVE MOOD, which either asserts some-

¹ Here *servum*, the slave, is the direct object of the action denoted by the verb *beats*: *beats* (what?) *the slave*.

² *Voice* shows whether the subject *acts*, or is *acted upon*.

³ *Mood*, or *Mode*, means *manner*, and relates to the manner in which the meaning of the verb is expressed, as will be seen by observing the force of the several moods.

thing as a *fact*, or inquires after the fact: *lęgit*, he is reading; *legitne*, is he reading?

2. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, which expresses, not an actual fact, but a *conception*, often rendered by *may*, *let*, etc.: *lęgat*, he may read, let him read.

3. THE IMPERATIVE MOOD, which expresses a *command* or an *entreaty*: *lęge*, read thou.

II. THE INDEFINITE MOODS express the meaning of the verb in the form of nouns or adjectives. They are, —

1. THE INFINITIVE, which, like the English infinitive, gives the simple meaning of the verb, without any necessary reference to person or number: *legere*, to read.

2. THE GERUND, which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative singular*. It corresponds to the English participial noun in ING: *amandi*, of loving; *amandi causā*, for the sake of loving.

3. THE SUPINE, which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the *accusative* and *ablative singular*: *amatum*, to love, for loving; *amātu*, to be loved, in loving.

4. THE PARTICIPLE, which, like the English participle, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective.

A Latin verb may have four participles: two in the Active, the Present and the Future; *amans*, loving; *amaturus*, about to love; and two in the Passive, the Perfect, *amatus*, loved, and the Gerundive,¹ *amandus*, deserving to be loved.

III. TENSES.

197. There are six tenses: —

I. THREE TENSES FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION: —

1. Present: *amō*, I love.
2. Imperfect: *amābām*, I was loving.
3. Future: *amābō*, I shall love.

¹ Also called the *Future Passive Participle*.

II. THREE TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION:—

1. Perfect: *ǎmāvī*, I have loved, I loved.
2. Pluperfect: *ǎmāvērǎm*, I had loved.
3. Future Perfect: *ǎmāvērǎ*, I shall have loved.

199. NUMBERS AND PERSONS. — There are two numbers, SINGULAR and PLURAL,¹ and three persons, FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD.¹

CONJUGATION.

200. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the

INFINITIVE ENDINGS.

<i>Conj. I.</i>	<i>Conj. II.</i>	<i>Conj. III.</i>	<i>Conj. IV.</i>
ǎre,	ǎre,	ǎre,	ire.

201. STEM AND PRINCIPAL PARTS. — The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine are called, from their importance, the *Principal Parts* of the verb. They are all formed, by means of certain endings, from one common base, called the *Stem*.

202. THE ENTIRE CONJUGATION of any regular verb may be readily formed from the Principal Parts by means of the proper endings.²

203. *SUM*, *I am*, is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly, its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset.

¹ As in nouns. See 44.

² In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings, both those which distinguish the Principal Parts and those which distinguish the forms derived from those parts, are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed.

204. Sūm, *I am.* — STEMS, *ēs, fu.*¹

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
sūm,	essē,	fuī,	—. ²

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am.

SINGULAR.

sūm,	<i>I am,</i>
ēs,	<i>thou art,</i> ³
est,	<i>he is ;</i>

PLURAL.

sūmūs,	<i>we are,</i>
estīs,	<i>you are,</i>
sunt,	<i>they are.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I was.

ērām,	<i>I was,</i>
erās,	<i>thou wast,</i>
erāt,	<i>he was ;</i>

ērāmūs,	<i>we were,</i>
erātīs,	<i>you were,</i>
erant,	<i>they were.</i>

FUTURE.

I shall or will be.

ērō,	<i>I shall be,</i>
erīs,	<i>thou wilt be,</i>
erit,	<i>he will be ;</i>

ērīmūs,	<i>we shall be,</i>
erītīs,	<i>you will be,</i>
erunt,	<i>they will be.</i>

PERFECT.

I have been, was.

fuī,	<i>I have been,</i>
fuistī,	<i>thou hast been,</i>
fuīt,	<i>he has been ;</i>

fuīmūs,	<i>we have been,</i>
fuistīs,	<i>you have been,</i>
fuērunt,	} <i>they have been.</i>
fuērē,	

PLUPERFECT.

I had been.

fuērām,	<i>I had been,</i>
fuērās,	<i>thou hadst been,</i>
fuērāt,	<i>he had been ;</i>

fuērāmūs,	<i>we had been,</i>
fuērātīs,	<i>you had been,</i>
fuērant,	<i>they had been.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been.

fuērō,	<i>I shall have been,</i>
fuērīs,	<i>thou wilt have been,</i>
fuērīt,	<i>he will have been ;</i>

fuērīmūs,	<i>we shall have been,</i>
fuērītīs,	<i>you will have been.</i>
fuērint,	<i>they will have been.</i>

¹ *Sum* has two verb-stems, while regular verbs have only one.

² The supine is wanting in this verb.

³ Or, *you are*: *thou* is confined mostly to solemn discourse.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may be.*¹

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
śin,	<i>I may be,</i>		simūs,	<i>we may be,</i>
śis,	<i>thou mayst be,</i>		śitś,	<i>you may be,</i>
śit,	<i>he may be ;</i>		sint,	<i>they may be.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should be.

essēm,	<i>I might be,</i>		essēmūs,	<i>we might be,</i>
essēs,	<i>thou mightst be,</i>		essētś,	<i>you might be,</i>
essēt,	<i>he might be ;</i>		essent,	<i>they might be.</i>

PERFECT.

I may have been.

fučřim,	<i>I may have been,</i>		fučřimūs,	<i>we may have been,</i>
fučřis,	<i>thou mayst have been,</i>		fučřitś,	<i>you may have been,</i>
fučřit,	<i>he may have been ;</i>		fučřint,	<i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have been.

fuissēm,	<i>I might have been,</i>		fuissēmūs,	<i>we might have been,</i>
fuissēs,	<i>thou mightst have been,</i>		fuissētś,	<i>you might have been,</i>
fuissēt,	<i>he might have been ;</i>		fuissent,	<i>they might have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. śs,	<i>be thou,</i>		estč,	<i>be ye.</i>
FUT. estō,	<i>thou shalt be,</i> ²		estōtč,	<i>ye shall be,</i>
estō,	<i>he shall be ;</i>		suntō,	<i>they shall be.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRES. essč,	<i>to be.</i>
PERF. fuissč,	<i>to have been.</i>
FUT. fütürūs ³ essč,	<i>to be about to be.</i>

PARTICIPLE.

FUT. fütürūs, ³	<i>about to be.</i>
----------------------------	---------------------

¹ The Subjunctive is sometimes best rendered by *let*: *sit, he may be, may he be, let him be.*

² The Future is sometimes best rendered like the Present, or with *let*: *esto, thou shalt be, or be thou ; suntō, they shall be, or let them be.*

³ *Fütürus* is declined like *bonus* ; N. *fütürus, a, um*, G. *fütüri, ae, i* ; so in the Infinitive : *fütürus, a, um esse.*

RULE XXXV.—Verb with Subject.

460. A Finite¹ Verb agrees with its Subject² in NUMBER and PERSON:

*Deus mundum aedificāvit,*³ *God made the world.* Cic. *Ego rēges ejēci, vos tȳrannos intrōdūctis,* *I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

1. PARTICIPLES IN COMPOUND TENSES.— These agree with the subject, according to Rule XXXIII. page 32:

*Thebāni accusāti sunt,*⁴ *The Thebans were accused.* Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED.— The subject is generally omitted—

1) When it is a Personal Pronoun, or can be readily supplied from the context:

*Discipūlos mōneo,*⁵ *ut stūdia āment,*⁶ *I instruct pupils to love⁶ their studies.* Quint.

¹ See 196, I.

² With the Active Voice of a Transitive Verb, the *Subject* represents the person (or thing, one or more) who *performs* the action; as, *Deus* in the first example, *God made*: but, with the Passive Voice, it represents the person (or thing, one or more) who *receives* the action, i.e. *is acted upon*, as, *Thebāni*, 460, 1: *the Thebans were accused*.

³ *Aedificāvit* is in the Third Person and in the Singular Number, because its subject *deus* is in that person and number. *Ejēci* is in the First Person Singular, to agree with its subject *ego*; and *introducītis* in the Second Person Plural, to agree with its subject *vos*.

⁴ The verb *accusāti sunt* is in the Third Person Plural, to agree with its subject *Thebāni*, according to Rule XXXV.; but the participle *accusāti*, which is one element of the verb, is in the Nominative Plural Masculine, to agree with its noun *Thebāni*, according to Rule XXXIII.

⁵ The subject of *moneo* is *ego*. It is omitted, because it is a Personal Pronoun, and is, accordingly, fully implied in the verb, as the ending *eo* shows, as we shall soon see, that the subject cannot be *you, he, or they*, but must be *I*.

Ut—ament means literally *that they may love*. The subject of *ament* is the pronoun *ii*, they, referring to *discipūlos*. It is omitted, partly because it is implied in the ending *ent*, but more especially because it can be so readily supplied from *discipūlos*, which shows *who* are here meant by *they*.

⁶ *To love*, or, more literally, *that they may love*.

The Pronoun may be expressed for emphasis or contrast, as in the second example under the rule.

I. DIRECTIONS FOR PARSING VERBS.

In parsing a verb,

1. Tell whether it is transitive or intransitive (193), name the Conjugation to which it belongs, give the Present Indicative Active and the Stem (201).
2. Give the Principal Parts (201), and inflect the tense in which the given form is found.¹
3. Give the voice, mood, tense, number, and person.
4. Name the subject, and give the Rule for agreement.

MODELS FOR PARSING THE VERB SUM.

1. *Sum with Subject.*

Nōs² ērāmūs, *We were.*

Erāmūs is an intransitive irregular³ verb, from *sum*. Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui*, — 4. Inflection of tense (Imperfect Indicative): *eram, eras, erat, erāmūs, erātis, erant*. The form *erāmūs* is found in the Indicative mood, Imperfect tense, First person, Plural number, and agrees with its subject *nos*, according to Rule XXXV.: "A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON."

2. *Sum without Subject.*⁵

Fuī, *I have been.*

Fuī is an intransitive irregular verb, from *sum*. Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui*. Inflection of tense (Perfect Indicative): *fui, fuisti*,

¹ That is, if the form occurs in a given tense of the Indicative, give the several forms for the different persons and numbers in that tense and mood. The teacher may also find it convenient to require the synopsis of the mood till the required tense is found.

² *Nos* is the Subject. With an intransitive verb, the Subject represents the person (or thing) who is in the condition, or state, denoted by the verb.

³ Hence it does not belong to either of the regular conjugations.

⁴ The *Supine* is wanting.

⁵ That is, without any subject expressed.

fuit; *fuimus*, *fuistis*, *fuērunt*, or *fuēre*. The form *fui* is found in the *Indicative mood*, *Perfect tense*, *First person*, *Singular number*, and agrees with its subject *ego* omitted (though fully implied¹ in the ending *i* of *fui*), according to Rule XXXV.

EXERCISE XVII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Sum, sumus, sunt.² 2. Es, est, estis. 3. Eram, erāmus.² 4. Erat, erant. 5. Eris, eritis.² 6. Erit, erunt. 7. Fui, fuēram, fuēro. 8. Fuimus, fuerāmus, fuerimus. 9. Fuisti, fuistis. 10. Fuit, fuērunt. 11. Fuērat, fuērant. 12. Fuērit, fuērint. 13. Sim, simus. 14. Sit, sint. 15. Essem, essēmus. 16. Esset, essent. 17. Fuērim, fuisset. 18. Fuerimus, fuissēmus. 19. Fuērit, fuērint. 20. Fuisset, fuissent. 21. Es, este.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He³ is, they³ are. 2. He has been, they have been. 3. He will be, they will be. 4. He was, they were. 5. He will have been, they will have been. 6. He had been, they had been. 7. I³ was, you were. 8. We have been, you have been. 9. You may be, they may be. 10. He would be, they would be. 11. I might have been, we might have been.

¹ See Rule XXXV., 2, together with the note.

² In parsing the forms contained in this Exercise, observe the second Model just given. If the verb is of the first person, supply, as subject, the personal pronoun (184) of the first person; i.e., *ego* for the singular, and *nos* for the plural. If the verb is of the second person, supply the personal pronoun of the second person; i.e., *tu* for the singular, and *vos* for the plural. If the verb is of the third person, supply the demonstrative pronoun *is* (186) for the singular, and *ii* for the plural, as the personal pronoun *sui* is not used in the Nominative: hence, *ego sum*, *nos sumus*, *ii sunt*.

³ The English pronouns in this Exercise are not to be rendered by the corresponding Latin pronouns, as the latter may be implied in the ending of the verb, as in the Latin forms above: hence, *he is* = *est*.

SUM WITH SUBJECT AND ADJECTIVE.

RULE III. — Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite¹ Verb is put in the Nominative :

*Servius*² *regnāvit*, *Servius* reigned. Liv. *Pātent portae*, *The gates are open*. Cic. *Rex vicit*, *The king conquered*. Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively :

Ego rēges ejēci, *I have banished kings*. Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. See 460, 2 ; page 54.

MODEL FOR PARSING SUBJECTS.

Rex vicit, *The king conquered*.

Rex is a noun (39) of the Third Declension, as it has *is* in the Genitive Singular (47); of Class I., as its stem ends in a consonant ($x = g-s$, of which *s* is the ending, while *g* belongs to the stem. See 56); STEM, *reg*. Singular: *rex*, *regis*, *regi*, *regem*, *rex*, *rege*. Plural: *reges*, *regum*, *regibus*, *reges*, *reges*, *regibus*. It is of the Masculine gender, by 42, I. 1.; is in the Nominative Singular; and is the subject of *vicit*, according to Rule III.: "The Subject of a Finite Verb is put in the Nominative."

EXERCISE XVIII.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>Cātō</i> , <i>Cātōnis</i> , <i>m.</i>	<i>Cato</i> , a distinguished Roman.
<i>Crūdūs</i> , <i>ā</i> , <i>ūm</i> ,	<i>unripe</i> .
<i>Diligens</i> , <i>Diligentis</i> ,	<i>diligent</i> .
<i>Discipūlus</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>m.</i>	<i>pupil</i> .

¹ See 196, I.

² In these examples, the subjects are *Servius*, *portae*, and *rex*.

Germāniā, ae, f.	Germany.
Jūcundūs, ā, ūm.	pleasant, delightful.
Laudābilis, ē.	praiseworthy, laudable.
Mātūrūs, ā, ūm.	ripe.
Pōmūm, ī, n.	fruit.

II. Translate into English.

1. Pax¹ jucunda² est.³ 2. Pax jucunda erit. 3. Vita brevis est. 4. Cato bonus fuit. 5. Cives boni fuērunt. 6. Virtus laudabilis est. 7. Libri ūtilēs sunt. 8. Illi libri ūtilēs erunt. 9. Ille liber ūtilis fuērat. 10. Ūtilis⁴ fuisti. 11. Ūtilēs fuistis. 12. Germania fertilis est. 13. Agri fertiles fuērant. 14. Pomum crudum est. 15. Poma cruda sunt. 16. Poma matūra erunt. 17. Miles fortis est. 18. Milites fortes sunt.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. The pupil is diligent.⁵ 2. The pupils were diligent. 3. The boy is good. 4. He will be happy. 5. Good boys are happy. 6. You may be happy. 7. We might have been happy. 8. This soldier will be useful. 9. These soldiers have been useful. 10. Brave soldiers are useful. 11. You will be useful. 12. Let us be useful.

¹ Pax is the subject of *est*, and is therefore in the Nominative, according to Rule III.

² Jucunda is an adjective in the Nominative Singular Feminine, to agree with its noun *pax*, according to Rule XXXIII., page 34.

³ Est is a verb in the Indicative mood, Present tense, Third person, Singular number, and agrees with its subject *pax*, according to Rule XXXV., page 54.

⁴ Utilis agrees with the omitted subject *tu*, implied in the ending of the verb.

⁵ In translating English into Latin, the pupil is expected, in the arrangement of words, to imitate the order followed in the Latin Exercises. He will observe that the subject stands first, and the verb last. But sometimes the verb precedes one or more words in the sentence. Thus the sentence, *Pax jucunda est*, might be *Pax est jucunda*.

SUM WITH PREDICATE NOUN.

RULE I.—Predicate Nouns.

362. A Predicate Noun¹ denoting the same person or thing as its subject agrees with it in CASE:

Ego sum nuntius,¹ *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv.

MODEL FOR PARSING PREDICATE NOUNS.

Egō sūm nuntiūs, *I am a messenger.*

Nuntius is a noun (39) of the Second Declension, as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (47); STEM, *nuntio*. Singular; *nuntius, nuntii, nuntio, nuntium, nuntie, nuntio*. Plural; *nuntii, nuntiorum nuntius, nuntios, nuntii, nuntius*. It is of the Masculine Gender by 51; is in the Nominative Singular, and, as a Predicate Noun, agrees in case with its subject *ego*, according to Rule I.: "A Predicate Noun denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE."

346. I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion:

Miltiades accūsātus est, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

II. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question:

Quis non paupertātem extimescit, *Who does not fear poverty?* Cic.

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS.—Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word,—either an interrogative pronoun,

¹ Every sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied:

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.

2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject.

Thus, in the first example under the Rule, *ego, I*, is the *subject*, and *sum nuntius* is the *predicate*. When the predicate thus consists of a *noun* with the verb *sum*, or of a noun with a passive verb, the noun thus used is called a *predicate noun*. Accordingly, *nuntius* in the first example, and *rex* in the second, are *predicate nouns*.

adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne*, *nonne*, *num* :

- 1) Questions with *ne* ask for information : *Scribitne*, Is he writing ?
Ne is always thus appended to some other word.
- 2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes* : *Nonne scribit*.
Is he not writing ?
- 3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no* : *Num scribit*, Is he writing ?

EXERCISE XIX.

I. Vocabulary.

Ancūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Ancus</i> , Roman king.
Condītōr, condītōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>founder</i> .
Dēmōsthēnēs, īs, <i>m.</i>	<i>Demosthenes</i> , Athenian orator.
Ebriētās, ēbriētātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>drunkenness</i> .
Graecūs, ū, ūm,	<i>Greek, Grecian</i> .
Graceus, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Greek, a Greek</i> .
Insāniā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>insanity, madness</i> .
Inventōr, inventōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>inventor</i> .
Mātēr, matrīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>mother</i> .
Mundūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>world, universe</i> .
Nonnē, <i>interrog. part.</i>	<i>expects answer yes</i> .
Nūm, <i>interrog. part.</i>	<i>expects answer no</i> .
Philōsōphiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>philosophy</i> .
Rōmā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Rome</i> .
Rōmānūs, ū, ūm,	<i>Roman</i> .
Rōmānūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Roman, a Roman</i> .
Rōmūlūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Romulus</i> , the founder of Rome.
Scīpiō, Scīpiōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>Scipio</i> , Roman general.

II. Translate into English.^{1*}

1. Ancus² fuit³ rex⁴. 2. Nonne⁵ Romūlus rex fuērat ?
3. Romūlus rex fuērat. 4. Quis condītōr Romae⁶ fuit ?
5. Romūlus condītōr Romae fuit. 6. Ebriētās est insania.
7. Patria⁷ est parens omnium nostrum.⁸ 8. Graeci⁷ multā
rum artium⁸ inventōres erant. 9. Demosthēnes orātor fuit.

* For Notes to the references on this page, see page 61.

10. Num hic puer orātor crit? 11. Ille puer orātor sit.
 12. Philosophia est mater artium. 13. Cicēro clarissimus⁹
 orātor fuit. 14. Cantus luscinae jucundissimus⁹ est.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who¹⁰ was the king?¹¹ 2. Was not¹² Romulus king?¹¹
 3. Romulus was king. 4. Who was the leader of the
 Romans? 5. Was not¹² Scipio the leader of the Romans?
 6. Scipio was the leader of the Romans. 7. Your brother
 is an orator. 8. This boy is my brother. 9. These boys
 will be diligent pupils. 10. These pupils will be diligent.

¹ In preparing the longer and more difficult sentences in this and in the subsequent exercises, it is recommended that the pupil should follow the Suggestions which are inserted in this volume, page 143, and which are intended to aid him in discerning the *process* by which he may most readily and surely reach the meaning of a Latin sentence.

² See Rule III. page 57.

³ See Rule XXXV. page 54. The verb sometimes precedes the Predicate Noun, as in this sentence; and sometimes follows it, as in several of the following sentences.

⁴ *Rex* is a *Predicate Noun*, denoting the same person as its subject *Ancus*, and is therefore in the Nominative, to agree with that subject in *case*, according to Rule I. page 59.

⁵ See 346, II. 1 above.

⁶ Genitive, according to Rule XVI. page 21.

⁷ In this sentence, before turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, notice carefully the endings of the several words in accordance with Suggestion IV. What parts of speech do you find? What cases? What mood, tense, number, and person?

In accordance with Suggestion V., what order will you follow in looking out the words in the Vocabulary?

⁸ *Artium* depends upon *inventōres*.

⁹ In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what forms will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *clarissimus* and *jucundissimus* (162)?

¹⁰ See 188.

¹¹ See Rule I.

¹² *Nonne*. See 346 II. 1.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

205. Amō, I love. — STEM, āma.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
āmō,	āmārē,	āmāvī,	āmātūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I love, am loving, do love.

SINGULAR.

āmō,	<i>I love,</i>
āmās,	<i>thou lovest,</i>
āmāt,	<i>he loves ;</i>

PLURAL.

āmāmūs,	<i>we love,</i>
āmātīs,	<i>you love,</i>
āmānt,	<i>they love.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I loved, was loving, did love.

āmābām,	<i>I was loving,</i>	āmābāmūs,	<i>we were loving,</i>
āmābās,	<i>thou wast loving,</i>	āmābātīs,	<i>you were loving,</i>
āmābāt,	<i>he was loving ;</i>	āmābant,	<i>they were loving.</i>

FUTURE.

I shall or will love.

āmābō,	<i>I shall love,</i>	āmābīmūs,	<i>we shall love,</i>
āmābīs,	<i>thou wilt love,</i>	āmābītīs,	<i>you will love,</i>
āmābīt,	<i>he will love ;</i>	āmābunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

PERFECT.

I loved, have loved.

āmāvī,	<i>I have loved,</i>	āmāvīmūs,	<i>we have loved,</i>
āmāvīstī,	<i>thou hast loved,</i>	āmāvīstīs,	<i>you have loved,</i>
āmāvīt,	<i>he has loved ;</i>	āmāvērunt, ērē,	<i>they have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I had loved.

āmāvērām,	<i>I had loved,</i>	āmāvērāmūs,	<i>we had loved,</i>
āmāvērās,	<i>thou hadst loved,</i>	āmāvērātīs,	<i>you had loved,</i>
āmāvērāt,	<i>he had loved ;</i>	āmāvērānt,	<i>they had loved.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have loved.

āmāvērō,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>	āmāvērīmūs,	<i>we shall have loved,</i>
āmāvērīs,	<i>thou wilt have loved,</i>	āmāvērītīs,	<i>you will have loved,</i>
āmāvērīt,	<i>he will have loved ;</i>	āmāvērīnt,	<i>they will have loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may love.

SINGULAR.

āreĉm, *I may love,*
āreš, *thou mayst love,*
āreĉt, *he may love;*

PLURAL.

āreĉmūs, *we may love,*
āreĉtis, *you may love,*
ārent, *they may love.*

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should love.

āmarĉm, *I might love,*
āmarĉs, *thou mightst love,*
āmarĉt, *he might love;*

āmarĉmūs, *we might love,*
āmarĉtis, *you might love,*
āmarĉnt, *they might love.*

PERFECT.

I may have loved.

āmāvĉrim, *I may have loved,*
āmāvĉris, *thou mayst have loved,*
āmāvĉrit, *he may have loved;*

āmāvĉrimūs, *we may have loved,*
āmāvĉritis, *you may have loved,*
āmāvĉrint, *they may have loved.*

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have loved.

āmāvissĉm, *I might have loved,*
āmāvissĉs, *thou mightst have loved,*
āmāvissĉt, *he might have loved;*

āmāvissĉmūs, *we might have loved,*
āmāvissĉtis, *you might have loved,*
āmāvissent, *they might have loved.*

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. **āre,** *love thou;*
 FUT. **āratō,** *thou shalt love,*
āratō, *he shall love;*

āratĉ, *love ye.*
āratōtĉ, *ye shall love,*
ārantō, *they shall love.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. **āmarĉ,** *to love.*
 PERF. **āmāvissĉ,** *to have loved.*
 FUT. **āmātūrūs¹ essĉ,** *to be about to love.*

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. **āmans,²** *loving.*
 FUT. **āmātūrūs,¹** *about to love.*

GERUND.

Gen. **āmandi,** *of loving,*
 Dat. **āmandō,** *for loving,*
 Acc. **āmandūm,** *loving,*
 Abl. **āmandō,** *by loving.*

SUPINE.

Acc. **āmātūm,** *to love,*
 Abl. **āmātū,** *to love, be loved.*

¹ Decline like *bonus*, 148.

² Decline like *prudens*, 157.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

206. Amor, *I am loved.* — STEM, *āma.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
āmōr,	āmāri,	āmātūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am loved.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
āmōr		āmāmūr
āmāris, or rō		āmāmīni
āmātūr;		āmantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I was loved.

āmābār		āmābāmūr
āmābaris, or rō		āmābāmīni
āmābātūr;		āmābantūr.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be loved.

āmābōr		āmābīmūr
āmābōris, or rō		āmābīmīni
āmābītūr;		āmābuntūr.

PERFECT.

I have been or was loved.

āmātūs sūm ¹		āmātī sūmūs
āmātūs es		āmātī estis
āmātūs est;		āmātī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been loved.

āmātūs ērām ¹		āmātī ērāmūs
āmātūs ēris		āmātī ērātis
āmātūs ērāt;		āmātī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been loved.

āmātūs ērō ¹		āmātī ērimūs
āmātūs ēris		āmātī ēritis
āmātūs ērit;		āmātī ērunt.

¹ *Fui, fuisti, etc.*, are sometimes used for *sum, es, etc.*; thus *amātus fui* for *amātus sum*. So *fuēram, fuēras, etc.*, for *ēram, ēras, etc.*; also *fuēro, fuēris, etc.*, for *ēro, ēris, etc.*

PRES
FUT.PRES
PERF.

FUT.

1 F
fuissen
2 G

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may be loved.

SINGULAR.

āmōr
āmōris, or rō
āmōtūr;

PLURAL.

āmōmūr
āmōmīni
āmōmentūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should be loved.

āmārōr
āmārōris, or rō
āmārōtūr;

āmārēmūr
āmārēmīni
āmārentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been loved.

āmātūs sim¹
āmātūs sis
āmātūs sit;

āmātī simūs
āmātī sitīs
āmātī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have been loved.

āmātūs essēm¹
āmātūs essēs
āmātūs essēt;

āmātī essēmūs
āmātī essētīs
āmātī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. āmārō, *be thou loved;*

āmāmīni, *be ye loved.*

FUT. āmātōr, *thou shalt be loved;*

āmātōr, *he shall be loved;*

āmāntōr, *they shall be loved.*

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES āmāri, *to be loved.*

PERF. āmātūs essē, *to have been loved.*

PERF. āmātūs, *having been loved.*

FUT. āmātūm iri, *to be about to be loved.*

GER.² āmandūs, *to be loved, desiring to be loved.*

¹ *Fuērim, fuēris, etc.*, are sometimes used for *sim, sis, etc.* So also *fuissem, fuisses, etc.*, for *essem, esses, etc.*

² GER. = Gerundive. See 196, 4.

MODELS FOR PARSING REGULAR VERBS.

1. *With Subject.*

Vos laudāvistis, *You have praised.*

Laudāvistis is a transitive verb (192, 193) of the First Conjugation (201), from *laudo*; STEM, *laudā*. Principal Parts: *laudo, laudāre, laudāvi, laudātum*. Inflection of Tense: *laudāvi, laudavisti, laudāvī, laudavimus, laudavistis, laudavērunt, or laudavēre*. The form *laudavistis* is found in the *Active* voice, *Indicative* mood, *Perfect* tense, *Second* person, *Plural* number, and agrees with its subject *vos*, according to Rule XXXV.: "A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON."

2. *Without Subject.*

Laudāvistis, *You have praised.*

This is parsed like *laudavistis*, above, except that it agrees with *vos*, implied in the ending *istis*; while *laudavistis*, above, agrees with *vos* expressed.

FIRST CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Vitūpērō, arē, avī, atūm, *to blame.*
Laudō, arē, avī, atūm, *to praise.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Amo, amābam, amābo.¹ 2. Amas, amābas, amābis.
3. Amat, amant.¹ 4. Amābat, amābant. 5. Amābit, amā-

¹ The pupil should carefully compare the forms grouped together under the several numerals, and observe in what they are *alike*, and in what they are *unlike*. Thus *amo, amābam, amābo*, have the letters *am*

bunt.¹ 6. Amāmus, amabāmus, amabīmus. 7. Amāvi, amavēram, amavēro. 8. Amāvīt, amavērat, amavērit. 9. Amāvi, amavīmus. 10. Amavēram, amāverāmus. 11. Amavēro, amaverīmus. 12. Amem, amārem, amavērim, amavissem. 13. Amēmus, amarēmus, amaverīmus, amāvissēmus. 14. Amet, ament. 15. Amāret, amārent. 16. Amavērit, amavērint. 17. Amavisset, amavissent. 18. Ama, amāte, amatōte. 19. Amāto, amanto.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I praise, I was praising, I will praise. 2. He praises, they praise. 3. He will praise, they will praise. 4. He was praising, they were praising. 5. You were praising, you will praise, you praise. 6. He has loved, he had loved, he will have loved. 7. I have praised, I had praised, I shall have praised. 8. He may love, they may love. 9. Let him praise, let them praise. 10. He would blame, they would blame. 11. I should have praised, we should have praised. 12. Praise thou, praise ye.

FIRST CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Amor, amābar, amābor. 2. Amāris, amabāris, amabēris. 3. Amātur, amantur. 4. Amabātur, amabantur.

in common; but they differ from each other in the endings, *o, ābam, ābo*. Originally, however, these forms had not only *am*, but *ama* in common, *es amo* was originally *ama-o*. This common basis *ama* is the stem of the verb. Such forms as *ama-t* and *ama-nt* show the stem in full. They are formed respectively by adding *t* and *nt* to the stem.

¹ Here the pupil will observe that the plural ending *bunt* differs from the singular ending *bit*, not only in having *n* before *t*, but also in changing *i* into *u*: BIT, BUNT.

5. Amabĭtur, amabuntur. 6. Amāmur, amabāmur, amabĭmur. 7. Amātus¹ sum, amātus eram, amātus ero. 8. Amātus es, amātus eras, amātus eris. 9. Amātus est, amāti¹ sunt. 10. Amātus erat, amāti erant. 11. Amātus erit, amāti erunt. 12. Amer, amārer, amātus sim, amātus essem. 13. Amēmur, amarēmur, amāti simus, amāti essēmus. 14. Amētur, amentur. 15. Amarētur, amarentur. 16. Amātus sit, amāti sint. 17. Amātus esset, amāti essent. 18. Amātor, amantor.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is praised, they are praised. 2. He was praised, they were praised. 3. He will be praised, they will be praised. 4. I am blamed, I was blamed, I shall be blamed. 5. You are loved, you are praised. 6. You were loved, you were praised. 7. You will be loved, you will be praised. 8. I have been blamed, you have been praised. 9. I had been blamed, you had been praised. 10. I shall have been blamed, you will have been praised. 11. You may be blamed, you might be blamed. 12. He would have been blamed, they would have been praised. 13. Let him be praised, let them be praised. 14. Be thou praised, be ye praised.

¹ The learner will observe, that, when the verb and the subject (expressed or implied) are in the Singular, the participle (*amātus*), which forms one element of the verb, is also in the Singular; and that, when the verb and the subject are in the Plural, the participle (*amāti*) is also in the Plural.

The form of the participle also varies with the *gender* of the subject, as well as with its *number*. Thus, if the subject is Masculine, the participle will be *amātus* in the Singular, and *amāti* in the Plural; if Feminine, *amāta* in the Singular, and *amātae* in the Plural; and, if Neuter, *amātum* in the Singular, and *amāta* in the Plural. Thus the participle in the compound tenses (i.e., in those which are made up of the participle and the auxiliary *sum*) agrees with the subject in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, like an adjective, according to Rule XXXV. 1, note.

FIRST CONJUGATION—BOTH VOICES.

EXERCISE XXII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. *Laudo, laudor.*¹ 2. *Laudābo, laudābor.*² 3. *Laudābam, laudābar.*² 4. *Laudem, lauder.* 5. *Laudārem, laudārer.*² 6. *Laudat, laudatur.*¹ 7. *Amābat, amabātur.* 8. *Amābit, amabītur.* 9. *Amet, amētur.* 10. *Amāret, amarētur.* 11. *Laudārent, laudarentur.* 12. *Ament, amentur.* 13. *Laudant, laudantur.* 14. *Amābant, amabantur.* 15. *Laudābunt, laudabuntur.* 16. *Amāvit, amātus est.* 17. *Laudavērat, laudātus erat.* 18. *Amavērit, amātus erit.* 19. *Lauda, laudāre.* 20. *Amāto, amātor.* 21. *Laudanto, laudantor.*

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He blames, he is blamed. 2. I was praising, I was praised. 3. You will praise, you will be praised. 4. He

¹ In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the two Voices,—the Active and the Passive,—and observe the difference between them. The Passive *laudor* differs from the Active *laudo* only in adding *r*; the Passive *laudābar* differs from the Active *laudābam* only in taking *r* in place of *m*. Thus we find, that, in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, the first person of the Passive is formed from the first person of the Active by simply adding *r*; or, if the Active ends in *m*, by substituting *r* for *m*. Again: the Passive *laudātur* differs from the Active *laudat* only in adding *ur*. Thus we find, that, in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, the third person of the Passive is formed from the third person of the Active by simply adding *ur*.

² Where must we look to find the meaning of these endings,—in the Vocabulary, or in the Grammar? and where to find the general meaning of the verb? See Suggestion II. To find the meaning of the verb to which *laudābor* belongs, for what form must we look in the Vocabulary? See Suggestion VII.

will blame, he will be blamed. 5. They will praise, they will be praised. 6. We blame, we are blamed. 7. He has praised, he has been praised. 8. They have blamed, they have been blamed. 9. He had praised, he had been praised. 10. They had blamed, they had been blamed. 11. He may praise, he may be praised. 12. He would blame, he would be blamed. 13. They may praise, they may be praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.¹

DIRECT OBJECT.

RULE V. — Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object² of an action is put in the Accusative.

*Deus mundum aedificāvit, God made the world.*³ Cic. *Libēra rem publicam, Free the republic.* Cic. *Pōpūli Rōmāni salūtem dēfendite, Defend the safety of the Roman people.* Cic.

¹ It is thought advisable that the pupil should now commence a review of the grammatical forms which he has already learned. Accordingly, this Exercise will involve nouns of the First and of the Second Declension. The pupil should therefore carefully review those Declensions (48, 51). In connection with the subsequent Exercises, it is expected that the other Declensions and the other Grammatical forms will be reviewed in order, as will be indicated in the respective headings which precede the several Exercises.

² The *Direct Object* of an action is generally the *object*, person, or thing, on which the action is *directly* exerted; as, *salūtem*, safety, in the third example; *defend* (what?) *the safety*. But the *Direct Object* is sometimes the *effect* of the action, i.e. the object produced by it; as, *mundum*, world, in the first example, — *made the world*.

³ In English, the object follows the verb; thus, in this example, *world* follows *made*; but in Latin the object usually precedes the verb: thus *mundum* precedes *aedificāvit*. So also, in the third example, *salūtem* precedes *defendite*; but sometimes the object follows the verb: thus in the second example, *rem publicam* follows *libēra*.

MODEL FOR PARSING DIRECT OBJECTS.

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.*

Mundum is a noun (39) of the Second Declension, as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (47); STEM, *mando.* Singular: *mundus, mundi, mundo, mundum, munde, mudo.* Plural: *mundi, mundorum, mundis, mundos, mundi, mundis.* It is of the Masculine gender, by 51; is in the Accusative Singular; and is the Direct Object of the transitive verb *aedificāvit*, according to Rule V.: "The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative."

EXERCISE XXIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Aedificō, arē, avi, atum,	<i>to build.</i>
Arō, arē, avi, atum,	<i>to plough.</i>
Cantō, arē, avi, atum,	<i>to sing.</i>
Italiā, ae, f.	<i>Italy.</i>
Libērō, arē, avi, atum,	<i>to liberate.</i>
Rēnovō, arē, avi, atum,	<i>to renew.</i>
Spērō, arē, avi, atum,	<i>to hope.</i>
Tarquinīus, ii, m.	<i>Tarquinius, Roman king.</i>
Themistōclēs, is, m.	<i>Themistocles, Athenian commander.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Lusciniā laudo.¹ 2. Lusciniā laudāmus. 3. Lusciniā laudat. 4. Lusciniā laudant. 5. Lusciniā laudātur. 6. Lusciniā laudantur. 7. Patriā amāmus. 8. Pro patriā² pugnābimus.² 9. Nonne³ Themistōclēs patriā liberāvit? 10. Patriā liberāvit. 11. Italiā liberāverunt. 12. Italiā liberāta⁴ est. 13. Tarquinius templum aedificā-

¹ *Lusciniā* is the *Direct Object* of *laudo*, according to Rule V.

² See Rule XXXII. page 26, and vocabulary page 73.

³ See 346, II. 1, page 59.

⁴ For agreement of participle with subject, see Rule XXXV. 460, 1, page 54.

vit. 14. Templum aedificabat. 15. Tempa aedificaverant. 16. Tempa aedificata erant. 17. Templum aedificatum erit. 18. Puerum laudabamus. 19. Pueri laudati sunt. 20. Nonne¹ bellum renovatum est?

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The nightingale is singing. 2. The nightingales are singing. 3. The nightingales will sing. 4. The boys have been praised. 5. Did you not¹ praise the boys?² 6. We praised the boys. 7. The boys will be praised. 8. Have we not¹ liberated Italy? 9. You have liberated Italy. 10. We will liberate the country. 11. We were ploughing the field. 12. Will you plough the field? 13. The field will be ploughed.

FIRST CONJUGATION—THIRD DECLENSION.³

ADVERBS.

RULE LI.—Use of Adverbs.

582. Adverbs⁴ qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS:

Sapientes feliciter⁴ vivunt, *The wise live happily.* Cic. Facile⁴ doctissimus, *unquestionably the most learned.* Cic. Haud⁴ aliter, *not otherwise.* Virg.

¹ See 346, II. 1, page 59.

² The Latin word for *boys* in this sentence will be in the Accusative, according to Rule V., and will precede the verb.

³ The pupil should now review the Third Declension (55-64).

⁴ The Adverb is, therefore, the part of speech which is used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. *Feliciter*, happily, is an adverb qualifying the verb *vivunt*, live (*live happily*). *Facile*, easily, unquestionably, is an adverb qualifying the adjective *doctissimus*, the most learned (*easily*, i.e. *unquestionably* the most learned). *Haud*, not, is an adverb qualifying the adverb *aliter*, otherwise (*not otherwise*). The adverb in Latin usually stands directly before the word which it qualifies, as in these examples.

MODEL FOR PARSING ADVERBS.

Sapientēs feliciter vivunt, *The wise live happily.*

Feliciter is an adverb, and qualifies *vivunt*, according to Rule LI:
 “Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS.”

EXERCISE XXIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Elōquentiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>eloquence.</i>
Expugnō, arē, avi, atūm,	<i>to take, take by storm.</i>
Fortiter, <i>adv.</i>	<i>bravely.</i>
Juventūs, juventūtis, <i>f.</i>	<i>youth.</i>
Ornō, arē, avi, atūm,	<i>to adorn, be an ornament to.</i>
Piētās, piētātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>filial affection, piety, duty.</i>
Pugnō, arē, avi, atūm,	<i>to fight.</i>
Servō, arē, avi, atūm,	<i>to preserve, keep, save.</i>
Volō, arē, avi, atūm,	<i>to fly.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Avis volat. 2. Aves volant. 3. Nonne¹ avis cantābat? 4. Aves cantābant. 5. Rex urbem² aedificāvit. 6. Urbs aedificāta³ est. 7. Urbes aedificātae³ erunt. 8. Milites fortiter⁴ pugnāverunt. 9. Scipio⁵ milites laudāvit. 10. Scipio⁵ militum virtūtem laudābat. 11. Scipionem laudāmus. 12. Scipio patrem servāvit. 13. Scipio urbem expugnāvit. 14. Urbs expugnāta est. 15. Milites patriam amant. 16. Milites⁵ pro patriā pugnābant. 17. Piētas pueros ornat. 18. Virtūtes civitātem ornant.

¹ See 346, II. 1, page 59.

² *Urbem*, direct object of *aedificāvit*, according to Rule V.

³ Why *aedificāta* in one case, and *aedificātae* in the other? Why not *aedificātus* in both? See Rule XXXV. 469, 1, page 54.

⁴ *Fortiter*, an Adverb qualifying *pugnāverunt*, according to Rule LI.

⁵ In what order will you look out the words in this sentence? See Suggestion V.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The birds are singing. 2. Do you not¹ love birds?²
 3. We love birds.³ 4. This bird will fly. 5. Did you not¹
 save the city? 6. The soldiers saved the city. 7. Shep-
 herds love the mountains. 8. We love virtue. 9. Is not
 virtue loved? 10. It is loved. 11. Do not the citizens
 praise the king? 12. They praise the king. 13. The king
 will be praised. 14. The virtue of the king is praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.³

EXERCISE XXV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Convocō, arē, avi, atum,	<i>to assemble, call together.</i>
Duplicō, arē, avi, atum,	<i>to double, increase.</i>
Dux, dūcis, m.	<i>general, leader.</i>
Fidēs, fidēi, f.	<i>faith, fidelity, word,⁴ promise.</i>
Fugō, arē, avi, atum,	<i>to rout.</i>
Hōmō, hōmīnis, m.	<i>man.</i>
Sēnātūs, ūs, m.	<i>senate.</i>
Stimulō, arē, avi, atum,	<i>to stimulate.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Homīnes⁵ cantum luscīniae⁶ laudant. 2. Cantus lus-
 ciniae laudātur. 3. Romūlus exercitum fugat. 4. Nonne

¹ See 346, II. 1, page 59.

² Remember that the *object* in Latin usually precedes the verb.

³ The pupil should now review these Declensions (116, 120).

⁴ To keep one's word, *fidem servāre*: I keep my word, *fidem meam servo*, or *fidem servo*, as the Latin possessives, *meus*, my, *tuus*, your, etc., when not emphatic, are often omitted; when expressed, they usually follow their nouns.

⁵ In this sentence, what order will you follow, in accordance with Suggestion V., in looking out the words in the Vocabulary? In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what forms will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *homīnes* (60), *mīlites* (58), *stimulāvīt* (205)?

⁶ See Rule XVI. page 21.

exercitum fugavimus? 5. Exercitus fugatus est. 6. Exercitus fugatus erit. 7. Consul senatum convocavit. 8. Senatus convocatus est. 9. Senatus consulem laudavit. 10. Spes victoriae milites stimulavit. 11. Numerum dierum duplicavi. 12. Numerus dierum duplicatus est.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The boy has kept his word.¹ 2. Will you not keep your word? 3. We will keep our word. 4. The consul praised the fidelity of the citizens. 5. Will not the fidelity of the citizens be praised? 6. Will not the citizens praise the fidelity of the army? 7. They have praised the fidelity of the army. 8. Did not the general praise the army? 9. He praised the army. 10. The army will be praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — ADJECTIVES.²

EXERCISE XXVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Ampliō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to enlarge.</i>
Condemnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to condemn.</i>
Hannibāl, Hannibālīs, m.	<i>Hannibal, Carthaginian general.</i>
Innōcens, innōcentīs,	<i>innocent.</i>
Nōbilis, ē,	<i>noble.</i>
Nōvūs, ā, ūm,	<i>new.</i>
Occūpō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to occupy.</i>
Pūnicūs, ā, ūm,	<i>Carthaginian, Punic.</i>

¹ See note 4, preceding page.

² The pupil should now review Adjectives (146-162).

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Rex urbem novam¹ ampliābat. 2. Urbem novam ampliābunt. 3. Rex urbem pulchram¹ ampliavērat. 4. Urbs pulchra servāta² est. 5. Hannibal multas civitates occupavit. 6. Judices hominem innocentissimum³ condemnaverunt. 7. Num Punicum bellum renovatum est? 8. Nonne Punicum bellum renovatum est? 9. Punicum bellum renovatum est. 10. Romani nobilissimas⁵ urbes expugnaverunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not the brave soldiers save the city? 2. The brave soldiers will save the beautiful city. 3. The noble city will be saved. 4. We praise good boys. 5. Good boys will be praised. 6. Do you not praise diligent pupils? 7. Diligent pupils are praised. 8. The citizens praise the brave soldiers.

FIRST CONJUGATION—PRONOUNS.⁴

EXERCISE XXVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Agis, Agidis, m.	Agis, king of Sparta.
Delectō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to delight.
Diligentiā, ae, f.	diligence.
Nōn, adv.	not.
Sālūtō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to salute.
Suū, ā, ūm,	his, her, its, their.

¹ See Rule XXXIII. p. 34.

² Why *servāta* rather than *servātus*? See Rule XXXV. 460, 1, p. 54.

³ In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what form will you look in the Vocabulary? See 162.

⁴ The pupil should now review Pronouns (182–191).

1.
chram
to salt
delect
laudan
tes suc
Parent

1. I
3. Wh
5. This
7. Did
9. Did
ents pr
you?
14. He

¹ These
nouns lik
nouns th
Possessiv
as in this

² Perso
(184). T
Rule V. p
³ The P
dered his,
meaning o
word to w
word, as p
rendered th
Plural.

⁴ When
the usual
stand either
⁵ Nonne.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Quis hanc¹ urbem servabit? 2. Hanc urbem pulchram servabimus. 3. Quis te² salutavit? 4. Pater meus¹ te salutat. 5. Haec¹ vita te delectat. 6. Philosophia nos delectat. 7. Omnia animalia se² amant. 8. Fratres tui¹ laudantur. 9. Fratres mei laudati sunt. 10. Puer parentes suos³ amat. 11. Puëri boni parentes suos³ amant. 12. Parentes nostros amamus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you blame me? 2. We do not⁴ blame you. 3. Whom do you blame? 4. We blame your brother. 5. This book delights me. 6. These books delighted us. 7. Did not⁵ your father praise you? 8. He praised us. 9. Did not⁵ king Agis praise your diligence? 10. Our parents praised our diligence. 11. Did your brother blame you? 12. He did not⁴ blame me. 13. He blamed himself. 14. He will be blamed.

¹ These Pronouns are all used as adjectives, and agree with their nouns like any other adjectives, according to Rule XXXIII. p. 34. Pronouns thus used as adjectives generally precede their nouns; but the Possessive Pronouns, *meus, tuus*, etc. (185), generally follow their nouns, as in this Exercise.

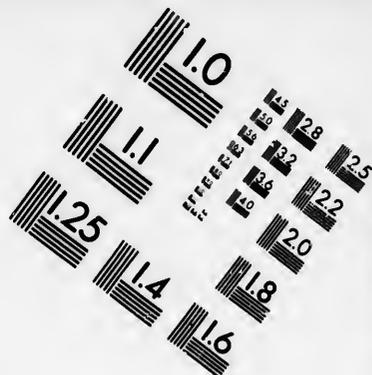
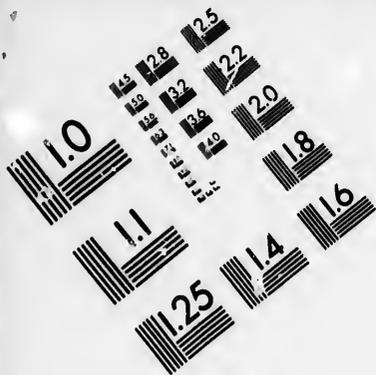
² Personal Pronouns, it will be remembered, are used as substantives (184). They are accordingly governed like any other substantives. See Rule V. p. 70. Observe that the object precedes the verb.

³ The pupil will observe that *suos* in the tenth sentence must be rendered *his*, while in the eleventh it must be rendered *their*. Thus the meaning of the Possessive *suus* depends in part upon the *number* of the word to which it refers. It must be rendered *his* (*her, its*) when that word, as *puer* in the tenth sentence, is in the *Singular*; but it must be rendered *their* when that word, as *puëri* in the eleventh sentence, is in the *Plural*.

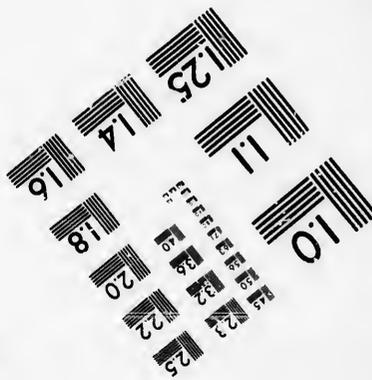
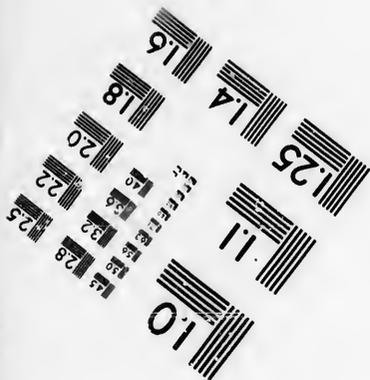
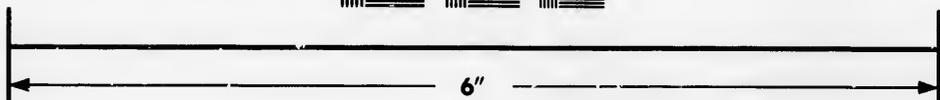
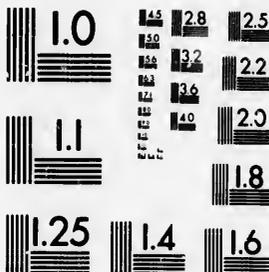
⁴ When a verb with a direct object has also an adverb qualifying it, the usual order is *Object, Adverb, Verb*; but the adverb *non*, not, may stand either *before* or *after* the object.

⁵ Nonne.





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

15
18
20
22
25
28
32
36
40
45

15
18
20
22
25
28
32
36
40
45

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

207. *Moneo, I advise.* — STEM, *mōne*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
mōneō,	mōnērē,	mōnuī,	mōnitūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I advise.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
mōneō		mōnemūs
mōnes		mōnetis
mōnet ;		mōnent.

IMPERFECT.

I was advising.

mōnebām		mōnebāmūs
mōnebas		mōnebatis
mōnebat ;		mōnebant.

FUTURE.

I shall or will advise.

mōnebō		mōnebimūs
mōnebis		mōnebitis
mōnebit ;		mōnebunt.

PERFECT.

I advised or have advised.

mōnuī		mōnuimūs
mōnuisti		mōnuistis
mōnuit ;		mōnuerunt, or erē.

PLUPERFECT.

I had advised.

mōnuērām		mōnuērāmūs
mōnuērās		mōnuērātis
mōnuērāt ;		mōnuērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have advised.

mōnuērō		mōnuērīmūs
mōnuēris		mōnuēritis
mōnuērit ;		mōnuērint.

PRES. I

FUT. I

PRES. II

FUT. II

PRES. III

PERF. III

FUT. III

PRES. IV

FUT. IV

Gen. mō

Dat. mō

Acc. mō

Abl. mō

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may advise.

SINGULAR.

mōneām
mōneās
mōneāt ;

PLURAL.

mōneāmūs
mōneātīs
mōneant.

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should advise.

mōnērēm
mōnērēs
mōnērēt ;

mōnērēmūs
mōnērētīs
mōnērent.

PERFECT.

I may have advised.

mōnuērīm
mōnuērīs
mōnuērīt ;

mōnuērīmūs
mōnuērītīs
mōnuērint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have advised.

mōnuissēm
mōnuissēs
mōnuissēt ;

mōnuissēmūs
mōnuissētīs
mōnuissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōnē,	<i>advise thou ;</i>		mōnētē,	<i>advise ye</i>
FUT. mōnētō,	<i>thou shalt advise,</i>		mōnētōtē,	<i>ye shall advise,</i>
	<i>he shall advise ;</i>		mōnentō,	<i>they shall advise</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRES. mōnērē, *to advise.*
PERF. mōnuissē, *to have advised.*
FUT. mōnītūrūs *essē, to be*
about to advise.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mōnens, *advising.*
FUT. mōnītūrūs, *about to advise.*

GERUND.

Gen. mōnendī, *of advising,*
Dat. mōnendō, *for advising,*
Acc. mōnendūm, *advising,*
Abl. mōnendō, *by advising.*

SUPINE.

Acc. mōnītūm, *to advise,*
Abl. mōnītū, *to advise, be advised.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

208. Moneor, *I am advised.* — STEM, *mōne.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
mōneōr,	mōnēri,	mōnītūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am advised.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mōneōr	mōnēmūr
mōnēris, or rē	mōnēmīni
mōnētūr ;	mōnentūr.
IMPERFECT.	
<i>I was advised.</i>	
mōnēbār	mōnēbāmūr
mōnēbāris, or rē	mōnēbāmīni
mōnēbātūr ;	mōnēbantūr.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be advised.

mōnēbōr	mōnēbīmūr
mōnēbēris, or rē	mōnēbīmīni
mōnēbitūr ;	mōnēbuntūr.

PERFECT.

I have been or was advised.

mōnītūs sūm ¹	mōnītī sūmūs
mōnītūs ēs	mōnītī estīs
mōnītūs est ;	mōnītī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been advised.

mōnītūs ērām ¹	mōnītī ērāmus
mōnītūs ērās	mōnītī ērātīs
mōnītūs erāt ;	mōnītī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been advisea.

mōnītūs ērō ¹	mōnītī ērimūs
mōnītūs ēris	mōnītī ēritīs
mōnītūs erit ;	mōnītī erunt.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may be advised.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mōneār	mōneāmūr
mōneāris, or rē	mōneāmīni
mōneātūr;	mōneantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should be advised.

mōnērēr	mōnērēmūr
mōnērēris, or rē	mōnērēmīni
mōnērētūr;	mōnērentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been advised.

mōnītūs sīm ¹	mōnītī simūs
mōnītūs sis	mōnītī sitis
mōnītūs sīt;	mōnītī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have been advised.

mōnītūs essēm ¹	mōnītī essēmūs
mōnītūs essēs	mōnītī essētīs
mōnītūs essēt;	mōnītī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōnērē, <i>be thou advised;</i>	mōnēmīni, <i>be ye advised.</i>
FUT. mōnētōr, <i>thou shalt be advised,</i>	
mōnētōr, <i>he shall be advised;</i>	mōnentōr, <i>they shall be advised.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mōnerī, <i>to be advised,</i>	PERF. mōnītūs, <i>advised,</i>
PERF. mōnītūs essē, <i>to have been advised,</i>	GER. ¹ mōnendūs, <i>to be advised, deserving to be advised.</i>
FUT. mōnītūm irī, <i>to be about to be advised.</i>	

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SECOND CONJUGATION — ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Mōneō, mōnērē, mōnui, mōnītūm,	<i>to advise.</i>
Pāreō, pārērē, pārui, pārītūm,	<i>to obey.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Moneo, monēbam, monēbo.¹ 2. Mones, monētis. 3. Monet, monent. 4. Monēmus, monebāmus, monebīmus. 5. Monēbant, mōnēbunt. 6. Monui, monuēram, monuēro. 7. Monuīmus, monuerāmus, monuerīmus. 8. Monuit, monuērunt. 9. Monuērat, monuērant. 10. Monuērit, monuērint. 11. Moneam, monērem, monuērim, monuissē. 12. Moneat, moneant. 13. Monēret, monērent. 14. Monuērit, monuērint. 15. Monuisset, monuissent.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. You advise, you were advising, you will advise. 2. He obeys, they obey. 3. He was obeying, they were obeying. 4. He will advise, they will advise. 5. He has obeyed, he had obeyed, he will have obeyed. 6. They have advised, they had advised, they will have advised. 7. I have advised, we have advised. 8. I had advised, I had obeyed. 9. He may advise, he may obey.

¹ The pupil should carefully compare the forms grouped together under the several numerals, and observe wherein they differ from each other.

FIRS

1. S
rēmus.
6. Spe
Sperab
parui.
13. Sp
Sperav

1. I
3. I wi
5. They
they w
hoped,
obeyed.
sung, th
vised.

¹ In th
ing forms
should ca

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXIX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Cantō, āre, āvi, ātūm, to sing.
Spērō, āre, āvi. ātūm, to hope.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Sperat, parent.¹ 2. Sperant, parent. 3. Sperāmus, parēmus. 4. Sperābat, parēbat. 5. Sperābant, parēbant. 6. Sperābam, parēbam. 7. Sperabāmus, parebāmus. 8. Sperabīmus, parebīmus. 9. Sperābo, parēbo. 10. Sperāvi, parui. 11. Speravēram, parūeram. 12. Speravēro, parūero. 13. Speravīmus, parūimus. 14. Speravērat, parūerat. 15. Speravērint, parūerint. 16. Sperāte, parēte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I sing, I advise. 2. I was singing, I was advising. 3. I will sing, I will advise. 4. He will hope, he will obey. 5. They will hope, they will obey. 6. They were singing, they were advising. 7. They sing, they advise. 8. He has hoped, he has obeyed. 9. They have hoped, they have obeyed. 10. He had sung, he had obeyed. 11. They had sung, they had obeyed. 12. We had hoped, we had advised. 13. We would sing, we would obey.

¹ In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the two Conjugations,—the First and the Second,—and should carefully observe the difference between them.

SECOND CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.
OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XXX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Aurūm, i, n.	<i>gold.</i>
Flōs, flōris, m.	<i>flower.</i>
Hābeō, hāberē, hābuī, hābitūm,	<i>to have, hold.</i>
Mēreō, mērērē, mēruī, mēritūm,	<i>to deserve, merit.</i>
Philōsōphūs, i, m.	<i>philosopher.</i>
Pondūs, pondēris, n.	<i>weight, mass.</i>
Praebeō, praebērē, praebuī, praebitūm,	<i>to furnish, give.</i>
Praemiūm, ii, n.	<i>reward.</i>
Tāceō, tācērē, tācuī, tācītūm,	<i>to be silent.</i>
Terreō, terrērē, terruī, territūm,	<i>to frighten, terrify.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Fuer librum habet. 2. Puēri libros habent. 3. Libros
utiles¹ habēmus. 4. Librum utilem habuisti. 5. Nonne
bonum¹ amicum habēbis? 6. Bonum amicum habēbo. 7.
Bonos amicos habuimus. 8. Rex amicos habēbat. 9. Rex
aurum habēbat. 10. Rex² magnum auri pondus³ habuērat.
11. Gloriam veram habebitis. 12. Ver praebet flores. 13.
Ver praebēbit flores. 14. Philosophus tacēbat. 15. Dis-
cipūlus praemium meret.

¹ Observe that the Latin adjective may either precede or follow its noun; though it seems more frequently to follow, unless it is emphatic.

² In this sentence, endeavor, in accordance with Suggestion IV., to discover the *subject, verb, and object*, before looking out the words in the Vocabulary. In what order will you look out the words in accordance with Suggestion V.?

³ When a noun is qualified by both an adjective and a genitive, as *pondus* by *magnum* and *auri*, the adjective usually precedes both nouns, and is followed by the genitive, as in this example: *magnum auri pondus*.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who has my book? 2. I have your book. 3. Which book have you? 4. I have three¹ books. 5. My brother has ten books. 6. The king had a golden crown. 7. Did he not have many friends? 8. He had many friends. 9. You will have true friends. 10. The pupils are silent.² 11. Will you not be silent? 12. We will be silent.

SECOND CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Moneor, monēbar, monēbor. 2. Monēmur, monebāmur, monebīmur. 3. Moneātur, moneantur. 4. Monerētur, monerentur. 5. Monītus est, monīti sunt. 6. Monītus erat, monīti erant. 7. Monītus erit, monīti erunt. 8. Monētor, monentor. 9. Monet, monētur. 10. Monent, monentur. 11. Monēbat, Monebātur. 12. Monēbant, monebantur. 13. Monēbit, monebītur. 14. Monēbunt, monebuntur. 15. Monēmus, monēmur. 16. Monebāmus, Monebāmur. 17. Monebīmus, monebīmur.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is advised, they are advised. 2. I was terrified, we were terrified. 3. He will be advised, they will be advised. 4. You have been terrified, I have been terrified. 5. He had been advised, he had been terrified. 6. I shall have been advised, I shall have been terrified. 7. I advise, I am advised. 8. I was advising, I was advised. 9. I shall advise, I shall be advised. 10. They terrify, they are terrified. 11. They were terrifying, they were terrified. 12. They will terrify, they will be terrified.

¹ Place the Numeral *before* the noun.

² *Are silent* is to be rendered by the Latin verb *taceo*.

VOICE.

hold.

e, merit.

er.

pass.

h, give.

at.

n, terrify.

3. Libros

5. Nonne

abēbo. 7.

t. 9. Rex

habuērat.

flores. 13.

15. Dis-

or follow its

s emphatic.

tion IV., to

words in the

accordance

genitive, as

both nouns,

uri pendus.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS — PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Admōneō, admōnēre, admōnui, admōnītum,	<i>to admonish.</i>
Amō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to love.</i>
Invitō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to invite.</i>
Laudō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to praise.</i>
Terreo, terrēre, terrui, territum,	<i>to terrify.</i>
Vitupēro, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to blame.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitātur, terrētur. 2. Invitantur, terrentur. 3. Invitāmur, terrēmur. 4. Invitabāmur, terrebāmur. 5. Invitabātur, terrebātur. 6. Invitabantur, terrebantur. 7. Invitabuntur, terrebuntur. 8. Invitabitur, terrebītur. 9. Invitābor, terrēbor. 10. Invitātus sum, terrītus sum. 11. Invitāti sumus, terrīti sumus. 12. Invitātus est, terrītus est. 13. Invitāti sunt, terrīti sunt. 14. Invitāti erant, terrīti erant. 15. Invitātus erat, terrītus erat.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I am invited, I am admonished. 2. You are invited, you are admonished. 3. He was praised, he was advised. 4. They were praised, they were advised. 5. You will be invited, you will be admonished. 6. He has been blamed, he has been terrified. 7. They had been loved, they had been admonished. 8. They will have been invited, they

will
be ad
monis

Apūd
Exer
Frāte
Māgis
Mēmō
Puēr,
Quis,
Rectē,
Tuūs,

1. Qu
recte m
recte m
Frater t
monīti
admonīti

¹ For

will have been admonished. 9. I may be invited, I may be admonished. 10. I should be invited, I should be admonished.

SECOND CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH. .

EXERCISE XXXIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Apūd, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>near, before, among.</i>
Exerceō, exercēre, exercui, exercitum,	<i>to exercise, train.</i>
Frāter, frātris, m.	<i>brother.</i>
Māgistēr, māgistrī, m.	<i>master, teacher.</i>
Mēmōriā, ae, f.	<i>memory.</i>
Puēr, puēri, m.	<i>boy.</i>
Quis, quae, quid, ¹	<i>who, which, what?</i>
Rectē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>rightly.</i>
Tuūs, ā, ūm,	<i>your, yours.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Quis monētur? 2. Nonne puer monētur? 3. Puer recte monētur. 4. Puēri recte monentur. 5. Discipūli recte monīti sunt. 6. Discipūlus recte monītus est. 7. Frater tuus recte admonītus erit. 8. Fratres tui recte admonīti erunt. 9. Nonne admonīti sumus? 10. Recte admonīti sumus. 11. Memoria exercētur. 12. Memoria

¹ For the declension of the Interrogative Pronoun *quis*, see 188.

exerceātur.¹ 13. Memoria exercebĭtur. 14. Discipŭli apud magistros exercentur.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Were not the boys terrified? 2. They were terrified. 3. Let² the pupils be admonished. 4. They have been admonished. 5. Who will be advised? 6. These boys will be advised. 7. Has your memory been exercised? 8. My memory has been exercised. 9. Was not the general terrified? 10. The general himself³ was not terrified. 11. The soldiers were terrified.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS—MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

I. Vocabulary.

Cāmillŭs, <i>1, m.</i>	<i>Camillus</i> , Roman general.
Exspectō, āre, āvi, ātŭm,	<i>to await, expect.</i>
Hostĭs, <i>is, m. and f.</i>	<i>enemy.</i>
Ingens, ingentĭs,	<i>huge, large, great.</i>
Lēgiō, lēgiōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>legion, body of soldiers.</i>
Nōn, <i>adv.</i>	<i>not.</i>
Nŭmērŭs, <i>1, m.</i>	<i>number.</i>
Optō, āre, āvi, ātŭm,	<i>to wish for, desire.</i>
Pēcūniā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>money.</i>

¹ *Exerceātur*; the Subjunctive is sometimes best rendered by *let*. See 196. I. 2.

² *Let be admonished* is to be rendered into Latin by a single verb in the Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

³ *Himself* = *ipse*. See 186.

1. C
3. Om
bant.
vōrant.
tacēba
orant.
ōphi po

1. A
3. Did
enemy.
good m
soldiers
praised
advised
14. The

¹ In ac
in the Vo

² Apply

³ *Ingen*
cise XXX

⁴ Put tl

⁵ Put to

Philōsōphūs, I, <i>m.</i>	<i>philosopher.</i>
Præceptōr, præceptōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>teacher.</i>
Proeliūm, ii, <i>n.</i>	<i>battle.</i>
Rōmānūs, I, <i>m.</i>	<i>Roman, a Roman.</i>
Sūpērō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to conquer.</i>
Vērecundiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>modesty.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Camillus hostes superāvit. 2. Hostes superāti sunt. 3. Omnes discipūli parūcrant.¹ 4. Romāni hostem exspectābant. 5. Romāni² ingentem hostium numērum³ exspectāvērunt.¹ 6. Hostes proelium exspectābant. 7. Præceptor tacēbat. 8. Discipūli tacēbant. 9. Verecundia juventūtem ornat. 10. Philosōphus pecuniam non habet. 11. Philosōphi pecuniam non optant.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are you expecting me? 2. We are expecting you. 3. Did you not await the enemy?⁴ 4. We awaited the enemy. 5. Have you not a good memory? 6. I have a good memory. 7. Will the soldiers obey? 8. The brave soldiers will obey. 9. Camillus had an army. 10. He praised the army. 11. Did you advise the boy? 12. We advised the boys. 13. Were not the enemy put to flight?⁵ 14. They were put to flight.

¹ In accordance with Suggestion VII. 3, for what form will you look in the Vocabulary? See 205, 207.

² Apply to this sentence Suggestions IV. and V.

³ *Ingentem hostium numērum*, for arrangement see note on *pondus*, Exercise XXX.

⁴ Put the Latin word in the plural.

⁵ *Put to flight* is to be rendered by a single Latin verb.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

209. Rego, *I rule.* — STEM, *reg.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
rēgō,	rēgērē,	rexī,	rectūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I rule.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rēgō	rēgimūs
rēgis	rēgitis
rēgit ;	rēgunt.

IMPERFECT.

I was ruling.

rēgēbām	rēgēbāmūs
rēgēbās	rēgēbātis
rēgēbāt ;	rēgēbant.

FUTURE.

I shall or will rule.

rēgām	rēgēmūs
rēgēs	rēgētis
rēgēt ;	rēgent.

PERFECT.

I ruled or have ruled.

rexī	reximūs
rexistī	rexistis
rexit ;	rexerunt, or ērē.

PLUPERFECT.

I had ruled.

rexērām	rexērāmūs
rexērās	rexērātis
rexērāt ;	rexērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have ruled.

rexērō	rexērīmūs
rexērīs	rexērītis
rexerit ;	rexerint.

PRES. reg

FUT. rēg

rēg

I N

PRES. rēg

PERF. rex

FUT. rec

G I

Gen. rēg

Dat. rēg

Acc. rēg

Abl. rēg

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may rule.

<p>SINGULAR.</p> <p>rēgām rēgās rēgāt ;</p>		<p>PLURAL.</p> <p>rēgāmūs rēgātis rēgant.</p>
--	--	--

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should rule.

<p>rēgērēm rēgērēs rēgēret ;</p>		<p>rēgērēmūs rēgērētis rēgērent.</p>
---	--	---

PERFECT.

I may have ruled.

<p>rexērīm rexērīs rexērīt ;</p>		<p>rexērīmūs rexērītis rexērīnt.</p>
---	--	---

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have ruled.

<p>rexissēm rexissēs rexissēt ;</p>		<p>rexissēmūs rexissētis rexissent.</p>
--	--	--

IMPERATIVE.

<p>PRES. regē, rule thou ;</p> <p>FUT. rēgītō, thou shalt rule, rēgītō, he shall rule ;</p>		<p>rēgītē, rule ye.</p> <p>rēgītōtē, ye shall rule, rēguntō, they shall rule.</p>
--	--	--

INFINITIVE.

PRES. **rēgērē**, to rule.
 PERF. **rexissē**, to have ruled.
 FUT. **rectūrūs essē**, to be about to rule.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. **rēgens**, ruling.
 FUT. **rectūrūs**, about to rule.

GERUND.

Gen. **rēgendī**, of ruling,
 Dat. **rēgendō**, for ruling,
 Acc. **rēgendūm**, ruling,
 Abl. **rēgendō**, by ruling.

SUPINE.

Acc. **rectūm**, to rule,
 Abl. **rectū**, to rule, be ruled.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

210. Regor, *I am ruled.* — STEM, *reg.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
rēgōr,	rēgī,	rectūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am ruled.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
rēgōr		rēgimūr
rēgōris, or rō		rēgimīni
rēgitūr;		rēgantūr.
	IMPERFECT.	
	<i>I was ruled.</i>	
rēgēbār		rēgēbamūr
rēgēbaris, or rō		rēgēbamīni
rēgēbātūr;		rēgēbantūr.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be ruled.

rēgār		rēgēmūr
rēgēris, or rō		rēgēmīni
rēgētūr;		rēgentūr.

PERFECT.

I have been or was ruled.

rectūs sūm¹		rectī sūmūs
rectūs ēs		rectī estīs
rectūs est;		rectī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been ruled.

rectūs ērām¹		rectī ērāmūs
rectūs ērās		rectī ērātīs
rectūs ērāt;		rectī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been ruled.

rectūs ērō¹		rectī ērimūs
rectūs ēris		rectī ēritīs
rectūs ērit;		rectī ērant.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may be ruled.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rēgār	rēgāmūr
rēgārīs, or rō	rēgāmīni
rēgātūr;	rēgantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should be ruled.

rēgērēr	rēgērēmūr
rēgērērīs, or rō	rēgērēmīni
rēgērētūr;	rēgērētūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been ruled.

rectūs sim ¹	recti simūs
rectūs sis	recti sitis
rectūs sit;	recti sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have been ruled.

rectūs essēm ¹	recti essēmūs
rectūs essēs	recti essētis
rectūs essēt;	recti essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rēgērē, <i>be thou ruled;</i>	rēgīmīni, <i>be ye ruled.</i>
FUT. rēgītōr, <i>thou shalt be ruled,</i>	rēgantōr, <i>they shall be ruled.</i>
rēgītōr, <i>he shall be ruled;</i>	

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rēgī, <i>to be ruled.</i>	
PERF. rectūs essē, <i>to have been ruled.</i>	PERF. rectūs, <i>ruled.</i>
FUT. rectūm irī, <i>to be about to be ruled.</i>	GER. ¹ rēgendūs, <i>to be ruled.</i>

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

THIRD CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Dūcō, ěrě, duxī, ductūm,	<i>to lead.</i>
Rěgō, ěrě, rexī, rectūm,	<i>to rule, govern.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Rego, regēbam, regam. 2. Regīmus, regebāmus, regēmus. 3. Regītis, regis. 4. Regēbas, regebātis. 5. Regēbant, regēbat. 6. Reget, regent. 7. Rexērunt, rexit. 8. Rexi, rexeram, rexero. 9. Rexīmus, rexerāmus, rexerīmus. 10. Regas, regeres, rexeris, rexisses. 11. Regātis, regerētis, rexerītis, rexissētis. 12. Regam, regāmus. 13. Regerēmus, regērem. 14. Rexerit, rexerint. 15. Rexissent, rexisset. 16. Rege, regite.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He leads, he was leading, he will lead. 2. He rules, he was ruling, he will rule. 3. They lead, they rule. 4. They were leading, they were ruling. 5. They will lead, they will rule. 6. You have led, you have ruled. 7. He had led, he had ruled. 8. They had led, they had ruled. 9. He will have led, he will have ruled. 10. They may lead, they may rule. 11. He would lead, he would rule. 12. They would lead, they would rule. 13. We should have led, we should have ruled.

FIRST

1. V
Vocab
5. Voc
7. Voc
rat, dix
cem, ta
Vocate

1. I i
we spea
were le
5. He l
had pra
blamed,
call, he

¹ In th
ing forms
Second, a
tween the
teaches th
which is o
language;
of close an
tracing re
the whole

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS — ACTIVE
VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Dicō, dicēre, dixī, dictūm,	<i>to say, tell, speak.</i>
Vocō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to call.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Vocat, tacet, dicit.¹ 2. Vocant, tacent, dicunt. 3. Vocābant, tacēbant, dicēbant. 4. Vocābo, tacēbo, dicam. 5. Vocāvīmus, tacuīmus, dixīmus. 6. Vocāvi, tacui, dixi. 7. Vocāvērunt, tacuērunt, dixērunt. 8. Vocavērat, tacuērat, dixērat. 9. Vocavērint, tacuērint, dixērint. 10. Vocem, taceam, dicam. 11. Vocārent, tacērent, dicērent. 12. Vocāte, tacēte, dicite.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I invite, I admonish, I lead. 2. We call, we are silent, we speak. 3. We were inviting, we were admonishing, we were leading. 4. I shall call, I shall be silent, I shall speak. 5. He has invited, he has been silent, he has led. 6. He had praised, he had obeyed, he had ruled. 7. They had blamed, they had advised, they had spoken. 8. He may call, he may admonish, he may rule.

¹ In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the three Conjugations here represented, — the First, the Second, and the Third, — and should carefully observe the difference between them. The advantages of such a course are twofold: first, it teaches the pupil to distinguish the several Conjugations from each other, which is one of the most important lessons to be learned in the study of the language; and, secondly, it tends to form in him, thus early, the habit of close and accurate observation, the habit of marking differences and of tracing resemblances in kindred forms, which is of vital importance in the whole course of classical study.

THIRD CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.
OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XXXVII.

I. Vocabulary.

Animūs, i, m.	mind, passion.
Bēnē, adv.	well.
Dēfectiō, dēfectiōnis, f.	eclipse.
Dīsertē, adv.	clearly, eloquently.
Edūcō, edūcērē, eduxī, eductūm,	to lead forth.
Indicō, indicērē, indixī, indictūm,	to declare.
Lātīnē, adv.	in Latin.
Praedicō, praedicērē, praedixī, praedictūm,	to predict, foretell.
Sāpientēr, adv.	wisely.
Thālēs, is, m.	Thales, a philosopher.
Tullūs, i, m.	Tullus, a Roman name.
Vērūm, i, n.	truth.

II. Translate into English.

1. Bene dixisti. 2. Nonne Cicero in senātu dixerat?
3. Cicero diserte dicēbat. 4. Oratōres diserte dicent. 5.
Philosōphus sapienter dixit. 6. Philosōphi sapienter dixē-
rant. 7. Oratōres Latīne dixērunt. 8. Caesar legiōnes
eduxit. 9. Hannībal exercitū in Italiā duxit. 10. Quis
bellum indixit? 11. Tullus bellum indixit. 12. Thales
defectiōnem solis praedixit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Who will speak the truth? 2. Have we not spoken
the truth? 3. You have spoken the truth. 4. Will not
the general lead forth the army? 5. He has led forth the
army. 6. Do you not govern your mind? 7. We govern
our minds. 8. Did you predict this war? 9. We did not
predict the war. 10. Who has declared war? 11. The
Romans have declared war.

THIRD CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Regor, regēbar, regar. 2. Regīmur, regebāmur, regēmur. 3. Regar, regāmur. 4. Regerētur, regerentur. 5. Rectus est, rectus erat, rectus erit. 6. Recti sunt, recti erant, recti erunt. 7. Regit, regitur. 8. Regunt, reguntur. 9. Regēbat, regebātur. 10. Regēbant, regebantur. 11. Reget, regētur. 12. Regent, regentur. 13. Regīmus, regīmur. 14. Regebāmus, regebāmur. 15. Regēmus, regēmur.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is ruled, they are ruled. 2. I am ruled, I am led. 3. We are ruled, we are led. 4. He was ruled, they were ruled. 5. He will be ruled, they will be ruled. 6. We have been ruled, we have been led. 7. I lead, I am led. 8. We lead, we are led. 9. We were ruling, we were ruled. 10. He was leading, he was led. 11. They may rule, they may be ruled.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS—
PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Vocor, moneor, ducor. 2. Vocāmur, monēmur, ducīmur. 3. Vocātur, monētur, ducītur. 4. Vocabātur, monebātur, ducebātur. 5. Vocabantur, monebantur, ducebantur. 6. Vocabuntur, monebuntur, ducentur. 7. Vocā-

tus es, monitus es, ductus es. 8. Vocāti estis, monīti estis, ducti estis. 9. Vocātus eram, monītus eram, ductus eram. 10. Vocātus erit, monītus erit, ductus erit.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is invited, he is admonished, he is led. 2. We were called, we were advised, we were ruled. 3. He will be called, he will be advised, he will be ruled. 4. He may be invited, he may be admonished, he may be led. 5. He has been called, he has been advised, he has been led. 6. They have been called, they have been advised, they have been led.

THIRD CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XL.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Mundūs, i, m.	<i>world.</i>
Semper, adv.	<i>always, ever.</i>
Vērūm, i, n.	<i>truth.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Mundus regitur. 2. Omnis hic mundus semper rectus est. 3. Hic mundus semper regitur. 4. Haec civitas bene regitur. 5. Hae civitates bene reguntur. 6. Civitates rectae sunt. 7. Animus regatur. 8. Exercitus in Italiam ductus est. 9. Multi exercitus in Italiam ducti erant. 10. Bellum indictum¹ erat. 11. Multa bella indicta¹ sunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not the army led forth? 2. The army was led forth. 3. Has not this state been well governed? 4. This

¹ Why *indictum* in one example, and *indicta* in the other? Why not rather *indictus* in both? See Rule XXXV. 1, page 54.

state
spoke
alway
9. W:

FD

Gallūs,
Hīrud
Lūnā, a
Nuntiō,
Sensūs,
Supplic

1. H
advent
4. Gall
praedix
animal

1. Th
will obs
Who ha
shall ha
the truth

¹ Let

state has been well governed. 5. Will not the truth be spoken? 6. The truth has been spoken. 7. Let¹ the truth always be spoken. 8. Would not war have been declared? 9. War would have been declared.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS—
MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

EXERCISE XLI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Gallūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>Gallus</i> , a proper name.
Hīrundō, hīrundīnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>swallow.</i>
Lūnā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>moon.</i>
Nuntiō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to proclaim, announce.</i>
Sensūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>feeling, perception.</i>
Supplicium, ii, <i>n.</i>	<i>punishment.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Hirundīnes adventum veris nuntiant. 2. Hirundīnes adventum veris nuntiavērant. 3. Discipūli laudabuntur. 4. Gallus defectiōnes solis praedixit. 5. Defectiōnes lunae praedixit. 6. Defectiōnes lunae praedicuntur. 7. Omne animal sensus habet. 8. Puēri tacēbant.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. This boy has not observed the law. 2. Good citizens will observe the laws. 3. Let the laws be observed. 4. Who has your book? 5. That boy has my book. 6. You shall have my book. 7. What did you say? 8. I spoke the truth. 9. The truth would have been spoken.

¹ *Let be spoken*, render by the Latin Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

211. Audio, *I hear*. — STEM, *audi*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
audiō,	audīrē,	audivī,	auditūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I hear.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
audiō		audimūs
audis		auditis
audit;		audiunt.

IMPERFECT.

I was hearing.

audiēbam		audiēbāmūs
audiēbas		audiēbātis
audiēbat;		audiēbant.

FUTURE.

I shall or will hear.

audiām		audiēmūs
audiēs		audiētis
audiēt;		audient.

PERFECT.

I heard or have heard.

audivi		audivimūs
audivisti		audivistis
audivit;		audiverunt, or <i>erō</i> .

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard.

audiverām		audiverāmūs
audiverās		audiverātis
audiverāt;		audiverant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have heard.

audiverō		audiverimūs
audiveris		audiveritis
audiverit;		audiverint.

PRES. a

FUT. a

a

IN

PRES. a

PERF. a

FUT. a

G

Gen. au

Dat. au

Acc. au

Ab. au

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may hear.

SINGULAR.

audiām
audiās
audiāt ;

PLURAL.

audiāmūs
audiātīs
audiant.

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should hear.

audirēm
audirēs
audirēt ;

audirēmūs
audirētīs
audirent.

PERFECT.

I may have heard.

audivērim
audivēris
audivērit ;

audivērimūs
audivēritīs
audivērint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have heard.

audivissēm
audivissēs
audivissēt ;

audivissēmūs
audivissētīs
audivissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. audi, *hear thou ;*

auditē, *hear ye.*

FUT. auditō, *thou shalt hear,*
auditō, *he shall hear ;*

auditōtē, *ye shall hear,*
audiuntō, *they shall hear.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. audirē, *to hear.*
PERF. audivissē, *to have heard.*
FUT. auditūrūs essē, *to be*
about to hear.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. audiens, *hearing.*
FUT. auditūrūs, *about to hear.*

GERUND.

Gen. audiendi, *of hearing.*
Dat. audiendō, *for hearing.*
Acc. audiendūm, *hearing.*
Abl. audiendō, *by hearing.*

SUPINE.

Acc. auditūm, *to hear.*
Abl. auditū, *to hear, be heard.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

212. Audior, *I am heard.* — STEM, *audi.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
audiōr,	audiri,	auditūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am heard.

SINGULAR.

audiōr
 audiris, or rē
 auditūr ;

PLURAL.

audimūr
 audimini
 audiuntūr.

IMPERFECT.

I was heard.

audiebār
 audiebaris, or rē
 audiebatūr ;

audiebāmūr
 audiebamini
 audiebantūr.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be heard.

audiār
 audieris, or rē
 audietūr ;

audiemūr
 audiemini
 audientūr.

PERFECT.

I have been heard.

auditūs sūm¹
 auditūs es
 auditūs est ;

auditī sūmūs
 auditī estis
 auditī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been heard.

auditūs ērām¹
 auditūs ēras
 auditūs ērāt ;

auditī ērāmūs
 auditī ērātis
 auditī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been heard.

auditūs ērō¹
 auditūs eritis
 auditūs erūt ;

auditī ērimūs
 auditī eritis
 auditī erunt.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may be heard.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
audiār		audiāmūr
audiārīs, or rō		audiāmīni
audiātūr;		audiāntūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should be heard.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
audirōr		audirēmūr
audirōrīs, or rō		audirēmīni
audirētūr;		audirentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been heard.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
auditūs sim ¹		auditī simūs
auditūs sis		auditī sitīs
auditūs sit;		auditī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have been heard.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
auditūs essēm ¹		auditī essēmūs
auditūs essēs		auditī essētīs
auditūs essēt;		auditī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. audirē, <i>be thou heard;</i>	audimīni, <i>be ye heard.</i>
FUT. auditōr, <i>thou shalt be heard,</i> auditōr, <i>he shall be heard;</i>	audiuntōr, <i>they shall be heard.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. audiri, <i>to be heard.</i>	PERF. auditūs, <i>heard.</i>
PERF. auditūs essē, <i>to have been heard.</i>	GER. ¹ audiendūs, <i>to be heard.</i>
FUT. auditūm iri, <i>to be about to be heard.</i>	

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Custōdiō, irē, ivi, itūm,	<i>to guard.</i>
Dormiō, irē, ivi, itūm,	<i>to sleep.</i>
Erūdiō, irē, ivi, itūm,	<i>to instruct, refine, educate.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Audis, audiēbas, audies. 2. Auditis, audiebātis, audietis. 3. Audio, audimus. 4. Audiēbam, audiebāmus. 5. Audiam, audiēmus. 6. Audivimus, audiverāmus, audiverimus. 7. Audivi, audiveram, audivero. 8. Audivit, audiverunt. 9. Audiam, audirem, audiverim, audivissem. 10. Audiāmus, audirēmus, audiverimus, audivissēmus. 11. Audito, auditōte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I hear, I guard. 2. We hear, we guard. 3. He was hearing, they were sleeping. 4. He was sleeping, they were hearing. 5. He will hear, they will hear. 6. We have slept, you have heard. 7. I had heard, I had guarded. 8. He may hear, they may sleep. 9. They may hear, he may sleep. 10. He might hear, they might sleep. 11. He might sleep, they might hear.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLIII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitat, admōnet, ducit, custōdit. 2. Invitant, admōnent, ducunt, custodiunt. 3. Invitābant, admonēbant, du-

cēbar
custo
divēr
audi
todiv
vērun

1.
was i
struct
speak
advise
you h

1. C
3. Mil
rum au
mus.
10. Ser
Puēri c
muniv

cēbant, custodiēbant. 4. Invitābat, admonēbat, ducēbat, custodiēbat. 5. Invitavēram, admonuēram, duxēram, audivēram. 6. Invitaverāmus, admonuerāmus, duxerāmus, audiverāmus. 7. Invitavērim, admonuērim, duxērim, custodivērim. 8. Invitavērunt, admonuērunt, duxērunt, audivērunt.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We invite, we admonish, we lead, we instruct. 2. I was inviting, I was admonishing, I was leading, I was instructing. 3. We were praising, we were obeying, we were speaking, we were instructing. 4. He will blame, he will advise, he will speak, he will instruct. 5. I have invited, you have obeyed, he has led, they have guarded.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XLIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Arctē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>closely, soundly.</i>
Mūniō, irē, ivi, itūm,	<i>to fortify.</i>
Sermō, sermōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>discourse, conversation.</i>
Thrāsýbulus, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Thrasylulus, Athenian general.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cives urbem custodiēbant. 2. Urbem custodiēmus. 3. Milites templum custodiunt. 4. Verum auditis. 5. Verum audite. 6. Verum audiverāmus. 7. Verba tua audimus. 8. Verba mea audivisti. 9. Oratiōnem tuam audivi. 10. Sermōnem audiēbam. 11. Puēri arcte dormiunt. 12. Puēri cantum luscinae audiēbant. 13. Thrasýbulus urbem munivit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you not hear us? 2. We hear you. 3. Who heard the oration? 4. We heard the oration. 5. The pupils heard the conversation. 6. They did not hear your oration. 7. The citizens are fortifying the city. 8. Who will guard this beautiful city? 9. The brave soldiers will guard the city. 10. Will you guard the temple? 11. We will guard the temple.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLV.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Audīmur, audiebāmur, audiēmur. 2. Audiātur, audiuntur. 3. Audīrer, audirēmur. 4. Audītus sum, audīti sumus. 5. Audīti erāmus, audītus eram. 6. Audītus erit, audīti erunt. 7. Audit, audītur. 8. Audiunt, audiuntur. 9. Audiet, audiētur. 10. Audīrem, audīrer. 11. Audiēbam, audiēbar. 12. Audiēbat, audiebātur. 13. Audīvit, audītus est. 14. Audivērat, audītus erat.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I am instructed, we are instructed. 2. He will be instructed, they will be instructed. 3. They have been heard, they have been instructed. 4. They had been heard, he had been instructed. 5. He was instructing, he was instructed. 6. They are instructing, they are instructed. 7. We have heard, you have been heard. 8. You have instructed, we have been instructed. 9. I have heard, you have been heard.

FIRS

1. I
tur, a
admo
itur, e
educel
sum, e
moniti
essēmu
esses.

1. H
garde
led for
will be
have be
ruled, y
had be
been gu

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLVI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitāris, admonēris, educēris, custodīris. 2. Invitantur, admonentur, educuntur, custodiuntur. 3. Invitātur, admonētur, educitur, custoditur. 4. Invitābitur, admonebitur, educētur, custodiētur. 5. Invitābātur, admonebātur, educebātur, custodiebātur. 6. Invitātus sum, admonitus sum, eductus sum, custoditus sum. 7. Invitāti erant, admonīti erant, educti erant, custodīti erant. 8. Invitāti essēmus, educti essēmus. 9. Admonitus esses, custoditus esses.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is called, he is terrified, he is led forth, he is guarded. 2. They are called, they are terrified, they are led forth, they are guarded. 3. They will be loved, they will be advised, they will be led, they will be heard. 4. I have been blamed, I have been admonished, you had been ruled, you had been guarded. 5. You had been blamed, I had been admonished. 6. You have been ruled, I have been guarded.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XLVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Bellūm, ī, n.

war.

Bēnignē, adv.

kindly.

Cīvilis, ē.

civil.

Egrēgiē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>excellently.</i>
Filiūs, <i>ii, m.</i>	<i>son.</i>
Finiō, irē, ivi, itūm,	<i>to finish, bring to a close.</i>
Lēgatiō, lēgatiōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>embassy.</i>
Vox, vōcis, <i>f.</i>	<i>voice.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Vox audita¹ est.
2. Voces audiuntur.
3. Cantus lusciniae auditur.
4. Cantus lusciniarum audiētur.
5. Urbs munita erat.
6. Urbes muniuntur.
7. Templum custodiētur.
8. Tempa custodiuntur.
9. Legatio benigne audita est.
10. Haec legatio benigne audiētur.
11. Verba tua benigne audientur.
12. Filii regis egregie erudiuntur.
13. Bellum civile finitum¹ est.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Was not the orator heard?
2. The renowned orator was kindly heard.
3. Let the city be fortified.²
4. Let the temples be guarded.
5. The city has been fortified.
6. The temples will be guarded.
7. Let the war be brought to a close.
8. Let the boys be instructed.
9. Let the words of the instructor be heard.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS. — MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Athēniensis, <i>is, m. and f.</i>	<i>an Athenian.</i>
Cānis, cānis, <i>m. and f.</i>	<i>dog.</i>
Cōlō, cōlērē, cōlui, cultūm,	<i>to practise, cultivate.</i>
Cūm, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	<i>with.</i>

¹ Why *audita* and *finitum*, instead of *auditus* and *finitus*? See Rule XXXV. 1, p. 54.

² Let *be fortified* is to be rendered into Latin by a single verb in the Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

1.
Disc
exer
oviu
8. L
lecta
soph

1.
loved
alway
laws
you in
9. W
army

¹ Fo
see Ru
² WH
188.

Firmō, arē, āvi, atūm,	<i>to strengthen.</i>
Grex, grēgis, m.	<i>herd, flock.</i>
Illustrō, arē, āvi, atūm,	<i>to illumine.</i>
Jungō, jungērē, junxi, junctūm,	<i>to join.</i>
Lābōr, lābōris, m.	<i>labor.</i>
Mōdestiā, ae, f.	<i>modesty.</i>
Ovis, ovīs, f.	<i>sheep.</i>
Portūs, ūs, m.	<i>port, harbor.</i>
Prūdentiā, ae, f.	<i>prudence.</i>
Terrā, ae, f.	<i>earth.</i>
Vālētūdō, vālētūdīnis, f.	<i>health.</i>
Vāriētās, vāriētātīs, f.	<i>variety.</i>
Viōlō, arē, āvi, atūm,	<i>violate.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Sol terram illustrat. 2. Modestia pueros ornat. 3. Discipuli memoriam exercent. 4. Discipuli tui memoriam exercēbant. 5. Canes gregem custodiēbant. 6. Greges ovium custodiuntur. 7. Praeceptōres juventūtem erudient. 8. Labor valetudīnem tuam firmābit. 9. Variētās nos delectat. 10. Athenienses portum muniverunt. 11. Philosophia nos erudit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Good men love virtue. 2. Virtue will always¹ be loved. 3. Let virtue be always practised. 4. We will always practise virtue. 5. The soldiers are violating the laws of the state. 6. They will be punished. 7. Will you instruct these boys? 8. We will instruct good boys. 9. Who² led this army into Italy? 10. Hannibal led the army into Italy.

¹ For the syntax of adverbs, and for their place in the Latin sentence, see Rule LI. and note 4, p. 72.

² Which form of the Interrogative should be used, *quis* or *quī*? See 188.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — VERBS IN IO.

221. A few verbs of the Third Conjugation form the Present Indicative in *io, ior*, like verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. They are inflected with the endings of the Fourth wherever those endings have two successive vowels.

ACTIVE VOICE.

222. *Cāpio, I take.* — STEM, *cāp*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
cāpiō,	cāpērē,	cēpi,	captūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
cāpiō, cāpis, cāpit;	cāpimūs, cāpitīs, cāpiunt.
	IMPERFECT.
cāpiēbām, -iēbās, -iēbāt;	cāpiēbāmūs, -iēbātīs, -iēbant.
	FUTURE.
cāpiām, -iēs, -iēt;	cāpiēmūs, -iētīs, -ient.
	PERFECT.
cēpi, -istī, -it;	cēpimūs, -istīs, -erunt, or ērē.
	PLUPERFECT.
cēpērām, -ērās, -ērāt;	cēpērāmūs, -ērātīs, -erant.
	FUTURE PERFECT.
cēpērō, -erīs, -erit;	cēpērīmūs, -erītīs, -erint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

cāpiām, -iās, -iāt;	cāpiāmūs, -iātīs, -iant.
	IMPERFECT.
cāpērēm, -ērēs, -ērēt;	cāpērēmūs, -ērētīs, -erent.
	PERFECT.
cēpērīm, -erīs, -erit;	cēpērīmūs, -erītīs, -erint.
	PLUPERFECT.
cēpissēm, -issēs, -issēt;	cēpissēmūs, -issētīs, -issent.

IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Pres. cāpē;		cāpītē.
Fut. cāpītō,		cāpītōte,
cāpītō;		cāpiuntō.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. cāpērē.
 Perf. cēpissē.
 Fut. captūrūs essē.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. cāpiens.
 Fut. captūrūs.

GERUND.

Gen. cāpiendī.
 Dat. cāpiendō.
 Acc. cāpiendūm.
 Abl. cāpiendō.

SUPINE.

Acc. captūm.
 Abl. captū.

PASSIVE VOICE.

223. *Capior, I am taken.* — STEM, *cāp.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
cāpiōr,	cāpī,	captūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
cāpiōr, cāpērīs, cāpītūr;		cāpīmūr, cāpīmīnī, cāpiuntūr.
IMPERFECT.		
cāpiēbār, -iēbārīs, -iēbātūr;		cāpiēbāmūr, -iēbāmīnī, -iēbantūr.
FUTURE.		
cāpiār, -iērīs, -iētūr;		cāpiēmūr, -iēmīnī, -ientūr.
PERFECT.		
captūs sūm, ēs, est;		captī sūmūs, estīs, sunt.
PLUPERFECT.		
captūs ērām, ērūs, ērāt;		captī ērāmūs, ērātīs, ērant.
FUTURE PERFECT.		
captūs ērō, ērīs, ērīt;		captī ērīmūs, ērītīs, ērunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.	PRESENT.	PLURAL.
cāpiār, -iāris, -iātūr;	cāpiāmūr, -iāmīni, -iantūr.	
	IMPERFECT.	
cāpērēr, -ērēris, -ērētūr;	cāpērēmūr, -ērēmīni, -ērentūr.	
	PERFECT.	
captūs sīm, sis, sit;	capti sīmūs, sītis, sint.	
	PLUPERFECT.	
captūs essēm, essēs, essēt;	capti essēmūs, essētis, essent.	

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. cāpērē;		cāpimīni.
FUT. cāpītōr, cāpītōr;		cāpiuntōr.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. cāpi.
PERF. captūs essē.
FUT. captūm iri.

PARTICIPLE.

PERF. captūs.
GER. cāpiendus.¹

EXERCISE XLIX.

I. Vocabulary.

A, ūb, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	<i>from, by.</i>
Accipiō, accipērē, accēpi, acceptūm,	<i>to receive.</i>
Bellūm, i, <i>n.</i>	<i>war.</i>
Cāpiō, cāpērē, cēpi, captūm,	<i>to take, capture.</i>
Carthāgō, Carthāginis, <i>f.</i>	<i>Carthage, city in Africa.</i>
Cornēlius, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Cornelius, a proper name.</i>
Gallūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>Gaul, a Gaul.²</i>

¹ The pupil will observe that the conjugation of *Capio* is somewhat peculiar, combining certain characteristics of the *Fourth Conjugation* with others of the *Third*. He should now carefully compare it with the conjugation of *Rego* and with that of *Audio*, and note with accuracy both the differences and the resemblances.

² The Gauls were a people inhabiting the country of ancient Gaul, embracing modern France.

Jaciō, jā
Lāpis, lā
Lux, lūc
Mūrūs, i
Publiūs,
Rēgūlūs,
Tēlūm, i
Trōjā, ac

1. Gr
Troja c
captus e
tur. 8.
erat. 10
tes cepit
sole acci
tela jaci

1. We
3. The c
5. The c
7. Publi-
not⁵ rec
10. Hav
received

¹ For the
subject, see

² See Ru

³ What i

note 1. In

⁴ Which

quā? See 1

⁵ Which

page 59.

Jāciō, jācērē, jāci, jactūm,	to cast, throw, hurl
Lāpis, lapidis, m.	stone.
Lux, lucis, f.	light.
Mūrūs, i, m.	wall.
Publiūs, ii, m.	Publius, a proper name.
Rēgūlus, i, m.	Regulus, Roman general.
Telūm, i, n.	javelin.
Trōjā, ae, f.	Troy, city in Asia Minor.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Graeci Trojam capiēbant. 2. Trojam cepērunt. 3. Troja capta¹ est. 4. Troja capta erat. 5. Regūlus ipse captus est. 6. Belli duces capientur. 7. Haec urbs capiētur. 8. Illam urbem capiēmus. 9. Roma a Gallis² capta erat. 10. Galli Romam cepērant. 11. Scipio multas civitātes cepit. 12. Luna lucem a sole accēpit. 13. Lucem a sole accipiēmus. 14. Tuam³ epistōlam accēpi. 15. Milites tela jaciēbant.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We were taking the city. 2. The city will be taken. 3. The city has been taken. 4. The cities will be taken. 5. The cities have been taken. 6. Who⁴ took Carthage? 7. Publius Cornelius Scipio took Carthage. 8. Have you not⁵ received my letter? 9. I have received your letter. 10. Have you received five letters? 11. We have received ten letters.

¹ For the agreement of the participle in the compound tenses with the subject, see Rule XXXV. 1, page 54.

² See Rule XXXII., page 26.

³ What is the usual place of the Possessive Pronoun? See page 77, note 1. In this sentence, *tuam* precedes its noun because it is emphatic.

⁴ Which form of the Interrogative Pronoun should be used, *quis* or *qui*? See 188.

⁵ Which Interrogative Particle should be used? See 346, II. 1, page 59.

PART THIRD.
S Y N T A X.

CHAPTER I.
SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

SECTION I.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

343. SYNTAX treats of the construction of sentences.

344. A sentence is thought expressed in language.

345. In their STRUCTURE, sentences are either *Simple*, *Complex*, or *Compound*:

I. A SIMPLE SENTENCE expresses but a single thought :
Deus mundum aedificāvit, God made the world. Cic.

II. A COMPLEX SENTENCE expresses two (or more) thoughts, so related that one is dependent upon the other :

Dōnec ēris fēlix, multos nūmērābis āmīcos; So long as you are prosperous, you will number many friends. Ovid.

1. CLAUSES. — In this example, two simple sentences, (1) “*You will be prosperous,*” and (2) “*You will number many friends,*” are so united that the first only specifies the *time* of the second : *You will number many friends, (when ?) so long as you are prosperous.* The parts thus united are called *Clauses* or *Members*.

III. A COMPOUND SENTENCE expresses two or more independent thoughts :

Sol ruit, et montes umbrantur, The sun descends, and the mountains are shaded. Virg.

346. In their USE, sentences are either *Declarative*, *Interrogative*, *Imperative*, or *Exclamatory*.

I. A
tion :

Militia

II. A

questio

Quis

1. INT
tain some
or adver

1) Qu
Ne is alw

2) Que
not writi

3) Que

III. A

mand, e

Justiti

IV. A
clamatio

Rēliqu

347.

sists of

1. Th

2. Th

Cluiliu

Here C

348.

consists

fers :

I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion :

Miltiades accusatus est, Miltiades was accused. Nep.

II. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question :

Quis non paupertatem extimescit, Who does not fear poverty? Cic.

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS. — Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word, — either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne, nonne, num* :

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information : *Scribitne, Is he writing? Ne* is always thus appended to some other word.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes* : *Nonne scribit, Is he not writing?*

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no* : *Num scribit, Is he writing?*

III. An IMPERATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a command, exhortation, or entreaty :

Justitiam cole, Cultivate justice. Cic.

IV. An EXCLAMATORY SENTENCE has the form of an exclamation :

Reliquit quos viros, What heroes he has left! Cic.

SECTION II.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

ELEMENTS OF SENTENCES.

347. The simple sentence in its *most simple form* consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied :

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.

2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject :

Cluilius moritur, Cluilius dies. Liv.

Here *Cluilius* is the subject, and *moritur* the predicate.

348. The simple sentence in its *most expanded form* consists only of these same parts with their various modifiers :

In his castris Cluilius, Albānus rex, mōrītur; *Cluilius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius, Albānus rex*, is the subject in its enlarged or modified form, and *in his castris moritur* is the predicate in its enlarged or modified form.

349. PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE. — The subject and predicate, being essential to the structure of every sentence, are called the *Principal* or *Essential* elements; but their modifiers, being subordinate to these, are called the *Subordinate* elements.

350. SIMPLE AND COMPLEX. — The elements, whether principal or subordinate, may be either simple or complex:

1. *Simple*, when not modified by other words.
2. *Complex*, when thus modified.¹

SIMPLE SUBJECT.

351. The subject of a sentence must be a noun, or some word or words used as a noun:

*Rex*² dēcrēvit, *The king decreed.* Nep. *Ego*³ ad te scribo, *I write to you.* Cic.

SIMPLE PREDICATE.

353. The simple predicate must be either a verb or the copula *sum* with a noun or adjective:

Miltiādes est accusātus,³ *Miltiades was accused.* Nep. *Tu es testis*, *You are a witness.* Cic. *Fortūna caeca est*, *Fortune is blind.* Cic.

1. Like *Sum*, several other verbs sometimes unite with a noun or adjective to form the predicate. A noun or adjective thus used is called a *Predicate Noun* or *Predicate Adjective*.⁴

¹ Thus, in the example given above, the simple subject is *Cluilius*; the complex, *Cluilius, Albānus rex*; the simple predicate, *mōrītur*; the complex, *in his castris moritur*.

² In these examples, the noun *rex* and the pronoun *ego*, used as a noun, are the subjects.

³ In the first of these examples, the predicate is the verb, *est accusātus*; in the second, the noun and copula, *est testis*; and in the third, the adjective and copula, *caeca est*.

⁴ Thus *testis*, in the second example, is a *Predicate Noun*, and *caeca*, in the third, is a *Predicate Adjective*.

382.

or thin

Ego s
lārātus, AAm
Cre
Gra
Imp
Lāt
Lāv
Mā
Nōm
Nūm
Rhē
Serv
Stul
Tūm

¹ In ill
Latin Syn
which they
proper plac
previous E

² See 38

CHAPTER II.
SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

SECTION I.

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

RULE I. — Predicate Nouns.¹

332. A Predicate Noun² denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE :

Ego sum nuntius,² *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv.

EXERCISE L.

I. Vocabulary.

Amnis, amnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>river.</i>
Creō, arē, āvi, atum,	<i>to create, make, elect.</i>
Graeciā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Greece.</i>
Impērātōr, impērātōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>commander.</i>
Lātinūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>Latinus, Italian king.</i>
Lāviniā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Lavinia, a proper name.</i>
Mālūm, i, <i>n.</i>	<i>evil.</i>
Nōmīnō, arē, āvi, atum,	<i>to call, name.</i>
Nūmā, ae, <i>m.</i>	<i>Numa, Roman king.</i>
Rhēnūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>the Rhine, river in Europe.</i>
Serviūs, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Servius, Roman king.</i>
Stultitiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>folly.</i>
Tūm, <i>adv.</i>	<i>then, at that time.</i>

¹ In illustrating in the subsequent pages the leading principles of the Latin Syntax, we shall take up the most common Rules in the order in which they stand in the Grammar. In doing so, we shall repeat in their proper places those Rules which we have had occasion to anticipate in the previous Exercises.

² See 354, 1; also Rule I. note, p. 59.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cicero consul¹ fuit.² 2. Cicero orator fuit. 3. Cicero tum³ erat² orator clarissimus.⁴ 4. Puer orator erit. 5. Numa erat rex. 6. Numa rex¹ creatus est. 7. Cato imperator fuit. 8. Cato magnus imperator fuit. 9. Scipio consul creatus est. 10. Scipio consul fuerat. 11. Stultitia est malum. 12. Gloria est fructus virtutis. 13. Graecia artium⁵ mater nominatur.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The Rhine is a large river. 2. Rome was a beautiful city. 3. Cato was a wise man. 4. Your father is a wise man. 5. Lavinia was the daughter of the king. 6. Latinus was king. 7. Lavinia was the daughter of Latinus. 8. Tullia was the daughter of Servius.

APPOSITIVES.

RULE II.—Appositives.

363. An Appositive⁶ agrees with its Subject in CASE:

Cluilius rex⁶ moritur, *Cluilius the king dies.* Liv. Urbes Carthago⁶ atque Numantia, *the cities Carthage and Numantia.* Cic.

¹ Predicate Noun. See Rule I. For Model for parsing Predicate Nouns, see p. 59.

² For the place of the verb with Predicate Nouns, see note on *fuit* under Exercise XIX.

³ Adverb qualifying *erat*. See Rule LI. p. 72.

⁴ See 162; also Rule XXXIII. p. 34.

⁵ *Artium* depends upon *mater*. See Rule XVI. p. 21.

⁶ See 363, note, p. 15; also Model, p. 16. *Rex, Carthago, and Numantia* are all Appositives.

Alex
Con
Epi
Erü
Han
Just
Mäc
Nöp
Paul
Phil
Pyr
Vul

1. C
justiss
4. Han
tus est.
vit. 7.
mater k

1. T
Tarquin
Scipio,
pio the
was the
Philip,

¹ App
p. 16.
² Pred
³ See 2

EXERCISE LI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Alexandĕr, Alexandri, <i>m.</i>	<i>Alexander, the Great.</i>
Conjux, conjūgĭs, <i>m. and f.</i>	<i>wife, husband.</i>
Epirŭs, ĭ, <i>f.</i>	<i>Epirus, country in Greece.</i>
Ērŭditŭs, ŏ, ūm,	<i>learned, instructed in.</i>
Hannŏ, Hannŏnĭs, <i>m.</i>	<i>Hanno, Carthaginian general.</i>
Justŭs, ŏ, ūm,	<i>just, upright.</i>
Măcĕdŏniă, ac, <i>f.</i>	<i>Macedonia, Macedon.</i>
Nĕpŏs, nĕpŏtĭs, <i>m.</i>	<i>grandson.</i>
Paulŭs, ĭ, <i>m.</i>	<i>Paulus, Roman consul.</i>
Philippŭs, ĭ, <i>m.</i>	<i>Philip, king of Macedon.</i>
Pyrrhŭs, ĭ, <i>m.</i>	<i>Pyrrhus, king of Epirus.</i>
Vulnĕrŏ, arĕ, ŏvi, atŭm,	<i>to wound.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cicĕro, eruditissĭmus *homo*,¹ consul² fuit. 2. Numa, justissĭmus *vir*, erat rex. 3. Ancus, Numae *nepos*,¹ rex fuit. 4. Hanno *dux* captus est.³ 5. Pyrrhus, Epiri rex, vulnerătus est. 6. Philippus, rex Macedoniae, Athenienses superăvit. 7. Paulus consul¹ regem superăvit. 8. Philosophia, mater bonărū artĭum, nos erŭdit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Tullia, *the daughter*¹ of Servius, was the wife² of Tarquin. 2. Servius, *the father* of Tullia, was a king. 3. Scipio, *the leader* of the Romans, took Carthage. 4. Scipio the general was praised. 5. Philip, king of Macedonia, was the father of Alexander. 6. Alexander, the son of Philip, was king of Macedonia.

¹ Appositive. See Rule II. For Model for parsing Appositives, see p. 16.

² Predicate Noun. See Rule I.

³ See 222.

SECTION II.

NOMINATIVE.

364. CASES. — Nouns have different forms or cases to mark the various relations in which they are used. These cases, in accordance with their general force, may be arranged and characterized as follows :

I. Nominative,	Case of the Subject.
II. Vocative,	Case of Address.
III. Accusative,	Case of Direct Object.
IV. Dative,	Case of Indirect Object.
V. Genitive,	Case of Adjective Relations.
VI. Ablative,	Case of Adverbial Relations. ¹

RULE III. — Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative :

Servius regnāvit, Servius reigned. Liv. *Pātent portae, The gates are open.* Cic. *Rex vicit, The king conquered.* Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively :

Ego rēges ejēci, I have banished kings. Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. — See 46C, 2, p. 54.

EXERCISE LII.

I. Vocabulary.

Libertās, libertātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>liberty.</i>
Opulentūs, ū, ūm,	<i>rich, opulent.</i>
Quōtidīe, <i>adv.</i>	<i>daily.</i>
Vitiūm, ii, <i>n.</i>	<i>fault, vice.</i>
Oppidum, i, <i>n.</i>	<i>town, city.</i>

¹ This arrangement is adopted in the discussion of the cases, because it is thought it will best present the force of the several cases, and their relation to each other.

1.
Haec
ma es
sempe
8. Lib
expug

1. V
donia,
4. Dic
fought
The la

369
put in
Perg
is it, C
yours, S

¹ Subj
jects, sec
² Why
³ Lack
is for La

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Italia*¹ liberāta² est. 2. *Urbs* Roma liberāta erat. 3. Haec *urbs* clarissīma liberabitur. 4. Haec *urbs* opulentissīma est capta. 5. Virtus quotidie laudatur. 6. Virtutes semper laudabuntur. 7. Sapientia semper est laudata. 8. Libertas semper laudabitur. 9. Omnia hostium oppida expugnata sunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not *Philip* wounded? 2. *Philip*, king of Macedonia, was wounded. 3. Many *soldiers* were wounded. 4. Did not the soldiers fight bravely? 5. The soldiers fought bravely. 6. Will not the laws be observed? 7. The laws have been observed. 8. They will be observed.

SECTION III.

VOCATIVE.

RULE IV. — Case of Address.

369. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative :

Perge, Laeli,³ *Proceed, Laelius.* Cic. Quid est, Cātīlina,³ *Why is it, Catiline?* Cic. Tuum est, Servi,³ *regnum. The kingdom is yours, Servius.* Liv.

EXERCISE LIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Auditōr, auditōris, m.	hearer, auditor.
Cārūs, ā, ūm,	dear.
Jūvēnis, is, m. and f.	a youth, young man.
Lēgātūs, ī, m.	ambassador.
Sālūtō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to salute.

¹ Subject of *liberāta est.* See Rule III. For Model for parsing Subjects, see p. 57.

² Why *liberāta* rather than *liberātus*? See Rule XXXV. 1, p. 54.

³ *Laeli*, *Catīlina*, and *Servi* are all in the Vocative by this Rule. *Laeli* is for *Laelie*; and *Servi*, for *Servie*.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Te, *Scipio*,¹ salutāmus. 2. Vos, *amīci*¹ carissīmi,² salūto. 3. Vos, *auditōres* omnes, salutāmus. 4. Verba mea, *judices*, audite. 5. Haec verba, *legāti*, audite. 6. Vos, milites, hanc urbem clarissimam custodite. 7. Milites¹ fortissīmi, patriam vestram liberāte. 8. Vestram virtutem, juvēnes, laudāmus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. *Boys*,¹ hear the words of your father. 2. *Judges*, you shall hear the truth. 3. *Father*, have we not spoken the truth? 4. You, boys, have spoken the truth. 5. Soldiers, you have fought bravely. 6. You, brave soldiers, have saved your country. 7. Pupils, I praise your diligence.

SECTION IV.

ACCUSATIVE.

RULE V.—Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object³ of an action is put in the Accusative :

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world*.⁴ Cic. Libēra rem publicam, *Free the republic*. Cic. Pōpūli Rōmāni sūlūtem dēfendite, *Defend the safety of the Roman people*. Cic.

¹ In the Vocative, according to Rule IV. No special Model for parsing is deemed necessary, as all nouns are parsed substantially in the same way; though different Rules are, of course, assigned for different cases. See Directions for Parsing, p. 15; also Model, p. 16.

The Vocative is not often the first word in the sentence, though it is sometimes thus placed, as in the seventh sentence in this Exercise.

² See 162.

³ See note on Direct Object, p. 70.

⁴ See note on the position of the Object in the Latin sentence, p. 70.

1. A
chras
pla s
consūl
Marce
cellus

1. D
paren
tise vir
Rome
taken
9. The

¹ Direc
for pars
² App
³ App
⁴ Huj
the Geni
note on p
⁵ See 3
⁶ The

EXERCISE LIV.

I. Vocabulary.

Flāminiūs, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Flaminius</i> , Roman general.
Marcellūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>Marcellus</i> , Roman general.
Poenūs, ā, ūm,	<i>Carthaginian</i> .
Poenus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>a Carthaginian</i> .
Sanctūs, ā, ūm,	<i>holy, sacred</i> .
Siciliā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Sicily</i> , the island of.
Spōliō, ūrē, āvi, ūtūm,	<i>to rob, spoil, despoil</i> .
Syrācūsae, ūrūm, <i>f. plur.</i>	<i>Syracuse</i> , city in Sicily.

II. Translate into English.

1. Alexander multas *urbes*¹ expugnāvit. 2. Italia pulchras *urbes* habuit. 3. Hostes *templa* spoliābant. 4. *Templa* sanctissima spoliavērunt. 5. Hannibal Flaminium¹ consulem² superāvit. 6. Poeni Siciliam occupavērant. 7. Marcellus³ magnam hujus insūlae⁴ partem cepit. 8. Marcellus Syracūsas,¹ nobilissimam urbem,² expugnāvit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Do you not⁵ love your *parents*?¹ 2. We love our *parents*. 3. You practise *virtue*. 4. Our pupils will practise *virtue*. 5. Did not Rome have beautiful temples? 6. Rome had beautiful temples. 7. Have not the enemy⁶ taken the city? 8. They have taken the beautiful city. 9. They will plunder all the temples.

¹ Direct Object, in the Accusative, according to Rule V. For Model for parsing, see p. 71.

² Appositive. See Rule II. 363.

³ Apply to this sentence Suggestions IV. and V.

⁴ *Hujus insūlae*, of this island; i.e., of Sicily. Observe the position of the Genitive between the adjective *magnam* and its noun *partem*. See note on *pondus*, Exercise XXX. II. 10.

⁵ See 346, II. 1.

⁶ The Latin word must be in the plural.

ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

RULE VIII. — Accusative of Time and Space.

378. DURATION OF TIME, and EXTENT OF SPACE, are expressed by the Accusative :

Römulus septem et triginta regnāvit *seventy-seven years*. Liv. *Romulus reigned thirty-seven years*. Liv. *Quinque millia passuum ambulāre, To walk five miles*. Cic. *Pēdes octōginta distāre, To be eighty feet distant*. Caes. *Nix quattuor pēdes¹ alta, Snow four feet deep*. Liv.

EXERCISE LV.

I. Vocabulary.

Aggēr, aggērīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>mound, rampart.</i>
Ambulō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to walk.</i>
Centūm,	<i>hundred.</i>
Glādiūs, <i>ii, m.</i>	<i>sword.</i>
Lācēdaemōniūs, <i>ii, m.</i>	<i>a Lacedaemonian, Spartan.</i>
Iātūs, ā, ūm,	<i>broad, wide.</i>
Longūs, ā, ūm,	<i>long.</i>
Mensīs, mensīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>month.</i>
Nox, noctīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>night.</i>
Octōgintā,	<i>eighty.</i>
Pēs, pēdīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>foot.</i>
Quinquāgintā,	<i>fifty.</i>
Regnō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to reign.</i>
Vigilō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to watch, be awake.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Lacedaemonii pacem sex annos² servaverunt. 2. Magnam noctis partem² vigilaveram. 3. Puer octo horas

¹ Annos denotes *Duration of Time*, while millia and pedes denote *Extent of Space*. They are all in the Accusative by this Rule.

² In the Accusative denoting *Duration of Time*. See Rule VIII. No special Model for parsing is necessary. The pupil will be guided by previous directions and Models.

dormi
sex m
Agger
pedes

1. I
hours.
eight
6. We
in the

379.
motio
Nunt
Plato T
quinius,

Athēnac
Fūgiō, f
Lysandē
Miltiādē
Nāvīgō, i

¹ In th
² Roma
Limit of
They are

dormivit. 4. Latinus multos *annos* regnāvit. 5. In Italiā sex menses fuīmus. 6. In illā urbe decem dies fuīmus. 7. Agger octoginta pedes¹ latus fuit. 8. Hic gladius sex pedes longus est.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Did you not walk two *hours*? 2. We walked three *hours*. 3. Did you not sleep six *hours*? 4. We slept eight *hours*. 5. The soldiers guarded the city ten months. 6. Were you not in the city four months? 7. We were in the city five months. 8. The mound was fifty feet high.

ACCUSATIVE OF LIMIT.

RULE IX.—Accusative of Limit.

379. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative :

Nuntius Rōmam rēdit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv. Plāto Tārentum² vēnit, *Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Fūgit Tarquinios,² *He fled to Tarquinii.* Cic.

EXERCISE LVI.

I. Vocabulary.

Athēnae, ārūm, *f. plur.*

Athens, capital of Attica.

Fūgiō, fūgērē, fūgī, fūgītūm,

to flee, fly, run away.

Lūsandēr, Lūsandri, *m.*

Lysander, Spartan general.

Miltiādēs, is, *m.*

Miltiades, Athenian general.

Nāvīgō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,

to sail, sail to.

¹ In the Accusative, denoting *Extent of Space.*

² *Romam, Tarentum, and Tarquinios* are all names of towns used as the *Limit of Motion*; i.e., the motion is represented as ending in those towns. They are in the Accusative, according to Rule IX.

Rĕdŭcĕ, rĕdŭcĕrĕ, rĕdŭxĭ, rĕductŭm,	<i>to lead back.</i>
Rĕvĕcĕ, Ārĕ, Āvi, Ātŭm,	<i>to recall.</i>
SpartĀ, ac, f.	<i>Sparta, capital of Laconia.</i>
TĀrentŭm, i, n.	<i>Tarentum, Italian town.</i>
ThĕbĀnŭs, ũ, ũm,	<i>Theban.</i>
ThĕbĀnŭs, i, m.	<i>a Theban.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Cicĕro *Romam*¹ revocĀtus est. 2. Consŭles *Romam* revocĀti sunt. 3. Hannĭbal *Carthagĭnem*¹ revocĀtus erat. 4. Lysander *Athĕnas*¹ navigĀvit. 5. Pyrrhus Tarentum fugĀtus est. 6. Consul regem Tarentum fugĀvit. 7. ThĕbĀni exercĭtum Spartam ducunt. 8. MiltiĀdes exercĭtum Athĕnas reduxit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Who fled *to Carthage*?² 2. Did not the enemy flee *to Carthage*? 3. They fled *to Carthage*. 4. Will not the army be led back to Rome?² 5. The army has been led back to Rome. 6. The commander led the army to Athens.

SECTION V.

DATIVE.

382. The Dative is the Case of the Indirect Object, and is used,

I. With Verbs.

II. With Adjectives.

III. With their Derivatives,— Adverbs and Substantives.

DATIVE WITH VERBS.

383. INDIRECT OBJECT. — A verb is often attended by a noun designating the object indirectly affected by the

¹ In the Accusative, according to Rule IX.

² The Latin word will be in the Accusative, in accordance with Rule IX.

action
A nou

384

I. W

Temp
had fear
selves to
us. Cic.

II. 7

ACCUS.

Pons

Liv. L
states. C

Carthāgĭ
Carthāgĭ
Cōnōn, C
Dĕbĕd, d
Displĕcĕd
Dōnō, Ār
Gens, ge
GrĀtiĀ, a
LĀbōrō, i

¹ Temp
cedit, timu
are in the

² Hostĭl
the Trans
in connect
runt.

action, — that TO or FOR which something is or is done. A noun thus used is called an Indirect Object.

RULE XII.—Dative with Verbs.

384. The INDIRECT OBJECT is put in the Dative :

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs :

Tempōri¹ cēdit, *He yields to the time.* Cic. Sibi timūcrant, *They had feared for themselves.* Caes. Lābōri stūdent, *They devote themselves to labor.* Caes. Nōbis¹ vita dāta est, *Life has been granted to us.* Cic. Nūmītōri dēditur, *He is delivered to Numitor.* Liv.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs, in connection with the ACCUSATIVE :

Pons īter hostībūs² dēdit, *The bridge gave a passage to the enemy.* Liv. Lēges civītātībūs suis scripsērunt, *They prepared laws for their states.* Cic.

EXERCISE LVII.

I. Vocabulary.

Carthāgīniensis, ē,	Carthaginian.
Carthāgīniensis, is, m. and f.	a Carthaginian.
Cōnōn, Cōnōnis, m.	Conon, Athenian gen'l.
Dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbui, dēbitūm,	to owe.
Displiceō, displicere, displicui, displicitūm,	to displease.
Dōnō, arē, avi, atūm,	to give.
Gens, gentis, f.	race.
Grātiā, ae, f.	favor, gratitude, thanks.
Lābōrō, arē, avi, atūm,	to strive for.

¹ *Tempōri, sibi, and labōri* are in the Dative with the Intransitive verbs *cedit, timūcrant* (intransitive here), and *student*; while *nobis* and *Numītōri* are in the Dative with the Passive verbs *data est* and *deditur*.

² *Hostībūs* is in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *iter*, with the Transitive verb *dedit*. In the same way, *civītātībūs* is in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *leges*, with the Transitive verb *scripsērunt*.

Monstrō, arē, āvī, ātūm,	to show, point out.
Plācēō, plācērē, plācui, plācītūm,	to please.
Sēnectūs, sēnectūtīs, f.	old age.
Sententiā, ae, f.	opinion.
Serviō, servīrē, servīvī, servitūm,	to serve.
Viā, ae, f.	way, road.

II. Translate into English.

1. Cives *legibus*¹ parent. 2. Multae Italiae civitates *Romānis* parēbant. 3. Haec sententia *Caesāri*¹ placuit. 4. Illa sententia *Caesāri* displicuit. 5. Milites gloriae labōrant. 6. Hoc consilium *Caesāri* nuntiātum est. 7. Nostra consilia hostībūs nuntiāta sunt. 8. *Tibi*² magnam *gratiam* habēmus. 9. Habeo *senectūti* magnam *gratiam*. 10. Conon pecuniam civībūs donāvit. 11. Pastor puēro viam monstrāvit. 12. Tibi viam monstrābo. 13. Romāni Carthaginiensībūs bellum indixērunt.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Did I not obey my³ father?¹ 2. You obeyed your father. 3. We will obey the laws of the state. 4. Do not the citizens serve the king? 5. They have served the king. 6. Will you not serve the state? 7. We will serve the state. 8. Will you not tell me (to me⁴) the truth?⁵ 9. I have told you (to you) the truth. 10. Will you show

¹ Indirect Object, in the Dative, according to Rule XII. I.

² Indirect Object, in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *gratiam* with the Transitive verb *habēmus*, according to Rule XII. II.

In the arrangement of Objects, the *Indirect* generally precedes the *Direct*, as in this sentence; though the order is sometimes reversed, as in the tenth sentence in this Exercise.

³ In examples like this, the Possessive pronoun may either be expressed or omitted, as it is often omitted in Latin when not emphatic.

⁴ Dative. See Rule XII. II.

⁵ Accusative. See Rule XII. II.

me ()
12.
They

39
ity is
Pat
dear to
Cic.
Cic. C
accom
Greece

1. A
those
Agré
useful,
verbals

A
H
M
S
S
S
V

¹ Dative
way in th
lupo with

me (to me) the way? 11. We will show you the way.
 12. Did they declare war against the Romans? 13.
 They had declared war against the Romans.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XIV.—Dative.

391. With Adjectives, the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative :

Patriae solum omnibus¹ carum est, The soil of their country is dear to all. Cic. *Id aptum est tempori, This is adapted to the time.*
 Cic. *Omni aetati mors est communis, Death is common to every age.*
 Cic. *Canis similis lupo est, A dog is similar to a wolf.* Cic. *Naturae accommodatum, Adapted to nature.* Cic. *Graeciae utile, Useful to Greece.* Nep.

1. ADJECTIVES WITH DATIVE. — The most common are those signifying :

Agreeable, easy, friendly, like, near, necessary, suitable, subject, useful, together with others of a similar or opposite meaning, and verbals in *bilis*.

EXERCISE LVIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Amicus, a, um,	friendly.
Hispania, ae, f.	Spain.
Multitudo, multitudinis, f.	multitude.
Saguntum, i, n.	Saguntum, city in Spain.
Similis, e,	like.
Solum, i, n.	soil.
Veritas, veritatis, f.	verity, truth.

¹ Dative, showing to whom the soil is dear, — dear TO ALL. In the same way in these examples, *tempori* is used with *aptum*, *aetati* with *communis*, *lupo* with *similis*, *naturae* with *accommodatum*, and *Graeciae* with *utile*.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Parentes *nobis*¹ cari sunt. 2. Patria *nobis* cara est. 3. Patria *tibi*¹ erit carissima. 4. Patriae solum *nobis* carum est. 5. Hannibal exercitui carus fuit. 6. Victoria Romānis grata fuit. 7. Libertas multitudīni grata est. 8. Veritas nobis gratissima est. 9. Jucunda mihi oratio fuit. 10. Saguntum Romānis amicum fuit. 11. Hannibal Saguntum,² Hispaniae civitatem³ Romānis⁴ amicam,⁵ expugnāvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not these books be useful *to you*? 2. They are useful *to us*. 3. They will be useful *to you*. 4. This law has been useful to the state. 5. Will not this book be acceptable to you? 6. That book will be acceptable to me. 7. This book will be most acceptable⁶ to my brother.

SECTION VI.

GENITIVE.

393. The Genitive in its primary meaning denotes *source* or *cause*; but, in its general use, it corresponds to the English Objective with *of*, and expresses various adjectival relations.

GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

RULE XVI.—Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:

¹ Dative, according to Rule XIV.

² Accusative. See Rule V.

³ Appositive, in agreement with Saguntum. See Rule II.

⁴ Dative with *amicam*. See Rule XIV.

⁵ *Amicam* agrees with *civitatem*. See Rule XXXIII. p. 34.

⁶ See 162.

Cat
camp
Liv.

1. Ju
omniur
fuit. 4
mūnis⁵
terrāru
sunt.
mum.

1 *Catō*
the Rule.
2 Liter
3 Geni
4 Geni
5 *Comm*
6 Geni
7 *Orbis*

Catōnis¹ orationēs, *Cato's orations*. Cic. Castra hostium, *The camp of the enemy*. Liv. Mors Hāmilcāris, *The death of Hamilcar*. Liv. See 363.

EXERCISE LIX.

I. Vocabulary.

Commūnis, ē,	<i>common.</i>
Conscientiā, ae, f.	<i>consciousness.</i>
Dulcis, ē,	<i>sweet, pleasant.</i>
Hōnōr, hōnōris, m.	<i>honor.</i>
Orbis, orbis, m.	<i>circle, world.</i>
Orbis terrārum, ²	<i>the world.</i>
Parvūs, ū, ūm,	<i>small.</i>
Principiū, ii, n.	<i>beginning.</i>
Rectū, i, n.	<i>rectitude, right.</i>
Sōcrātēs, is, m.	<i>Socrates, Athenian philosopher.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. *Justitia virtūtum*³ regina est. 2. *Sapientia est mater omnium bonārum artium*. 3. *Socrātes parens philosophiae* fuit. 4. *Virtus veri hōnōris*⁴ mater est. 5. *Patria commūnis*⁵ est omnium nostrum⁶ parens. 6. *Roma orbis*⁷ terrārum caput fuit. 7. *Omnium rerum principia parva sunt*. 8. *Conscientia recti est praemium virtūtis dulcissimum*.

¹ *Catōnis* qualifies *orationēs*, and is in the Genitive, in accordance with the Rule.

² Literally *the circle of lands*.

³ Genitive, depending upon *regina*. Rule XVI.

⁴ Genitive, depending upon *mater*.

⁵ *Commūnis* agrees with *parens*. See Rule XXXIII.

⁶ Genitive, depending upon *parens*.

⁷ *Orbis* depends upon *caput*, and *terrārum* upon *orbis*.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The orations of *Cicero* are praised.
2. The courage of the soldiers saved the city.
3. The crown of the king was golden.
4. The sword of the general was beautiful.
5. The son of the consul violated the laws of the state.
6. The citizens will observe the laws of the state.

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XVII.—Genitive.

399. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning :

Avidus laudis,¹ *Desirous of praise.* Cic. *Otii cupidus*, *Desirous of leisure.* Liv. *Amans sui virtus*, *Virtue fond of itself.* Cic. *Efficiens voluptatis*, *Productive of pleasure.* Cic. *Glōriæ mēmor*, *Mindful of glory.* Liv.

1. FORCE OF THIS GENITIVE.—The genitive here retains its usual force,—*of, in respect of*,—and may be used after adjectives which admit this relation.

2. ADJECTIVES WITH THE GENITIVE.—The most common are

1) Verbals in **ax**, and participles in **ans** and **ens** used adjectively.

2) Adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, skill, recollection, participation, mastery, fulness*, and their contraries.

EXERCISE LX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Amans, āmantis,
Avidūs, ū, ūm,

loving, fond of.
desirous of, eager for.

¹ *Laudis* completes the meaning of *avidus*; *desirous* (of what?) of *praise*. It is in the Genitive, by this Rule. In the same way, *otii* completes the meaning of *cupidus*; *sui*, of *amans*; *voluptatis*, of *efficiens*; and *glorīae*, of *mēmor*.

1.
avid
triae
6. C
avidi
9. A

1.
prais
Athe
of ple
not d
tory.

41
lated
to the
presse
with V
of adj
393.

¹ Gen
² Sec

Certāmēn, certāmīnīs, <i>n.</i>	<i>contest, strife, battle.</i>
Cūpīdūs, ū, ūm,	<i>desirous of.</i>
Fons, fontīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>fountain.</i>
Laus, laudīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>praise.</i>
Nōvītās, nōvītātīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>novelty.</i>
Pēritūs, ū, ūm,	<i>skilled in.</i>
Piscīs, piscīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>fish.</i>
Plēnūs, ū, ūm,	<i>full.</i>
Vōluptās, vōluptātīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>pleasure.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Romāni avīdi gloriæ¹ fuērunt. 2. Homīnes novitātis avīdi sunt. 3. Numa pacis¹ erat amantissimus.² 4. Patriæ amantissīmi sumus. 5. Consul gloriæ cupidus erat. 6. Cicerō gloriæ cupidissimus² fuit. 7. Milītes erant avidissīmi certamīnis. 8. Fons piscium plenissimus est. 9. Athenienses belli navālis peritissīmi fuērunt.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Boys are fond of praise. 2. Are you not fond of praise? 3. We are fond of praise. 4. Were not the Athenians fond of pleasure? 5. They were always fond of pleasure. 6. They are desirous of glory. 7. Are you not desirous of a victory? 8. We are desirous of a victory.

SECTION VII.

ABLATIVE.

412. The Ablative in its primary meaning is closely related to the Genitive; but, in its general use, it corresponds to the English Objective with *from, by, in, with*, and expresses various adverbial relations. It is accordingly used with Verbs and Adjectives; while the Genitive, as the case of adjective relations, is most common with Nouns. See 393.

¹ Genitive, completing the meaning of the adjective. See Rule XVII.

² See 162.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS.

RULE XXI.—Cause, Manner, Means.

414. Cause, Manner, and Means¹ are denoted by the Ablative :

Ars utilitate laudatur, An art is praised because of its usefulness. Cic. *Gloriā ducitur, He is led by glory.* Cic. *Duobus modis fit, It is done in two ways.* Cic. *Sol omnia luce collustrat, The sun illumines all things with its light.* Cic. *Apri dentibus se tūtantur, Boars defend themselves with their tusks.* Cic. *Aeger erat vulneribus, He was ill in consequence of his wounds.* Nep. *Laetus sorte tua, Pleased with your lot.* Hor.

1. APPLICATION OF RULE.—This Ablative is of very frequent occurrence, and is used both with verbs and adjectives.

2. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.—This designates that *by which, by reason of which, because of which, in accordance with which,* any thing is or is done.

3. ABLATIVE OF MANNER.—This Ablative is regularly accompanied by some modifier, or by the preposition *cum* ; but a few ablatives, chiefly those signifying *manner*, — *mōre, ordine, ratiōne,* etc., — occur without such accompaniment :

Vi summa, With the greatest violence. Nep. *Mōre Persarum, In the manner of the Persians.* Nep. *Cum silentio audire, To hear in silence.* Liv. *Id ordine facere, To do it in order, or properly.* Cic.

¹ It is not always possible to distinguish between *Cause, Manner,* and *Means.* Sometimes the same Ablative may involve both *Cause* and *Means,* or both *Means* and *Manner.* Still the pupil should be taught to determine in each instance, as far as possible, what is the real force of the Ablative. Thus in the examples, *utilitate* denotes cause, because of its usefulness ; *gloriā,* means, with perhaps the accessory notion of cause ; *modis,* manner ; *luce,* means ; *dentibus,* means ; *vulneribus,* cause, with perhaps the accessory notion of means ; and *sorte,* cause and means.

4.
ment

5. —
by wh
the pr
Occi

1. C
nita er
delectā
millus
singulā
umphāv

¹ By c
for instan
person by
designatin
the Theba
by glory.

² Ablat

³ Ablat

⁴ Ablat

⁵ The p

sometimes
victory.

4. ABLATIVE OF MEANS. — This includes the *Instrument* and all other *Means* employed.

5. ABLATIVE OF AGENT. — This designates the Person by whom any thing is done as a voluntary agent, and takes the preposition *a* or *ab*:

Occisus est a Thēbānis, *He was slain by the Thebans.*¹ Nep.

EXERCISE LXI.

I. Vocabulary.

Mūnūs, mūnērīs, <i>n.</i>	<i>reward, gift.</i>
Nātūrā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>nature.</i>
Pellis, pellis, <i>f.</i>	<i>skin, hide.</i>
Quōtidianūs, ā, ūm,	<i>daily.</i>
Scythae, ārum, <i>m. plur.</i>	<i>Scythians.</i>
Triumphō, ōrē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to triumph.</i>
Usūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>use.</i>
Vestiō, irē, ivi, itūm,	<i>to clothe.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Consul *virtūte*² laudātus est. 2. Urbs *naturā*³ munita erat. 3. Haec urbs *arte* muniētur. 4. *Muneribus*³ delectāmur. 5. Roma Camilli *virtūte* est servāta. 6. Camillus hostes magno proelio superāvit. 7. Scipio patrem *singulāri virtūte* servāvit. 8. Scipio *ingenti gloriā*⁴ triumphāvit.⁵ 9. Scythae corpōra pellibus vestiēbant.

¹ By comparing this example with those under the Rule, the second for instance, it will be seen that the Latin construction distinguishes the person by whom any thing is done from the means by which it is done, designating the former by the Ablative with *a* or *ab* (*a Thēbānis*, by the Thebans), and the latter by the Ablative without a preposition; *gloriā*, by glory.

² Ablative of Cause, according to Rule XXI.

³ Ablative of Means.

⁴ Ablative of Manner.

⁵ The privilege of entering Rome in grand triumphal procession was sometimes awarded to eminent Roman generals as they returned from victory. *Triumphāvit* here refers to such a triumph.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are not the fields adorned *with flowers*?¹ 2. The fields are adorned *with beautiful flowers*. 3. Have you not strengthened your memory *by use*? 4. I have strengthened my memory by daily use. 5. You will be praised for (because of) your diligence.² 6. Our pupils have been praised for their diligence. 7. The general saved the city by his valor. 8. Rome was saved by the valor of the Roman soldiers.

ABLATIVES WITH COMPARATIVES.

RULE XXIII.—Ablative with Comparatives.

417. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative:

Nihil est amabilius virtute,³ *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic.
Quid est melius bonitate,³ *What is better than goodness?* Cic.

1. COMPARATIVES WITH QUAM⁴ are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them:

Hibernia minor quam Britannia existimatur, *Hibernia is considered smaller than Britannia.* Caes. Agris quam urbi⁵ terribilior, *More terrible to the country than to the city.* Liv.

¹ Ablative of Means. Rule XXI.

² Ablative of Cause.

³ *Virtute* and *bonitate* are both in the Ablative, by this Rule; the former after the comparative *amabilis*, and the latter after the comparative *melius*.

⁴ *Quam* is a conjunction, meaning *than*. Conjunctions are mere connectives, used to connect words or clauses.

⁵ *Agris* and *urbi*, the one *before* and the other *after quam*, are both in the same construction, in the Dative, depending upon *terribilior* according to Rule XIV. 391.

1. V
mea e
foedi
6. An
murus
9. Pat
tior fu

1. S
valuab
money
gold?
6. Goo

1 See
2 Abl
to Rule
3 In t
is the su
4 Subj
In t

EXERCISE LXII.

I. Vocabulary.

Argentūm, i, n.	silver.
Avāritiā ae, f.	avarice.
Bōnitās, bōnitātis, f.	goodness, excellencia.
Elōquens, elōquentis,	eloquent.
Ferrūm, i, n.	iron.
Foedūs, ō, ūm,	detestable.
Prētiōsūs, ō, ūm,	valuable.
Quām, conj.	than.
Scientiā, ae, f.	knowledge.
Turrīs, turris, f.	tower.

II. Translate into English.

1. Virtus mihi ¹ *gloriā* ² est carior. 2. Patria mihi *vitā* ² meā est carior. 3. Quid est jucundius *amicitiā*? 4. Quid foedius est *avaritiā*? 5. Aurum argento pretiosius est. 6. Anīmus corpōre est nobilior. 7. Turrīs altior erat quam murus.³ 8. Quid multitudīni ¹ gratius quam libertas est? 9. Pater tuus est sapientior quam tu.⁴ 10. Quis eloquentior fuit quam Demosthēnes?

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Silver is more valuable than *iron*.² 2. Virtue is more valuable than *gold*. 3. Wisdom is more valuable than *money*. 4. Will not wisdom be more useful to you than gold? 5. Wisdom will be more useful to me than gold. 6. Goodness is more valuable than ⁵ knowledge. 7. Good-

¹ See Rule XIV. 391.

² Ablative, depending upon the comparative without *quam*, according to Rule XXIII.

³ In the same case as *turris*, the corresponding noun before *quam*. It is the subject of *erat* understood.

⁴ Subject of *es* understood.

In this and the following examples use *quam*, according to 417, 1.

ness is dearer to us than glory. 8. The Romans were braver than the Gauls. 9. The soldiers were braver than the general.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

420. This Ablative designates

- I. The PLACE IN WHICH any thing is or is done:
- II. The PLACE FROM WHICH any thing proceeds, including *Source* and *Separation*.

RULE XXVI.—Ablative of Place.

421. I. The PLACE IN WHICH and the PLACE FROM WHICH are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. NAMES OF TOWNS drop the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Locative: (45, 2).

I. Hannibal in Italiā¹ fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy*. Nep. In nostris castris, *In our camps*. Caes. In Appiā viā, *On the Appian Way*. Cic. Ab urbe proficiscitur, *He departs from the city*. Caes. Ex Africā, *From Africa*. Liv.

II. Athēnis² fuit, *He was at Athens*. Cic. Bābylōne mortuus est, *He died at Babylon*. Cic. Fūgit Cōrintho, *He fled from Corinth*. Cic. Rōmæ² fuit, *He was at Rome*. Cic.

EXERCISE LXIII.

I. Vocabulary.

A, ūb, prep. with abl.

from, by.

Bābylōn, Bābylōnis, f.

Babylon, the city of.

¹ In Italiā, in castris, and in viā designate the PLACE IN WHICH; while ab urbe and ex Africā designate the PLACE FROM WHICH. They are in the Ablative with a preposition.

² Athēnis, Bābylōne, and Cōrintho, being names of towns, omit the preposition; while Rōmæ, also the name of a town, is in the Locative, as it is in the Singular of the First declension. See 48, 4.

Cōrīnthūs, i, <i>f.</i>	<i>Corinth</i> , city in Greece.
Dionysius, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Dionysius</i> , tyrant of Syracuse.
Hābitō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to dwell</i> , <i>reside</i> .
Hortūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>garden</i> .
Laetitiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>joy</i> .
Lūcūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>grove</i> .
Rēgiō, rēgiōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>region</i> , <i>territory</i> .
Sēnātor, sēnātoris, <i>m.</i>	<i>senator</i> .
Trigintā,	<i>thirty</i> .

II. Translate into English.

1. Hannibal in *Hispaniā*¹ fuit. 2. Latinus in *Italiā* regnāvit. 3. Latinus in illis regionibus regnabat. 4. Cives ab urbe² fugiebant. 5. Themistocles e Graeciā fugit. 6. Sex menses³ *Athēnis*⁴ fui. 7. Alexander *Babylōne* erat. 8. Dionysius tyrannus Syracūsis fugit. 9. Themistocles *Athēnis* fugit. 10. *Athēnis* habitābat. 11. Romūlus *Romae*⁵ regnāvit. 12. *Romae* ingens laetitia fuit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Is not your father in *Italy*? 2. My father is in *Greece*. 3. Were you not in *Greece*? 4. We resided in *Greece* three years. 5. Who is in the garden? 6. My brother is in the garden. 7. The pupils were walking in the fields. 8. The nightingales are singing in the groves. 9. Your father resided many years at *Athens*. 10. Did he not reside at *Carthage*? 11. He resided four years at *Carthage*. 12. Did you not receive my letter at *Rome*? 13. I received your letter at *Corinth*.

¹ Ablative of PLACE IN WHICH, with the preposition *in*. See Rule XXXII.

² Ablative of PLACE FROM WHICH, with the preposition *ab*.

³ See Rule VIII.

⁴ In the Ablative, without a preposition, because it is the name of a town.

⁵ In the Locative, because it is the name of a town, and is in the Singular of the First declension.

ABLATIVE OF TIME.

RULE XXVIII.—Time.

426. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative:

Octogésimo anno¹ est mortuus, *He died in his eightieth year.* Cic. Vere convēnere, *They assembled in the spring.* Liv. Nātāli die suo, *On his birth-day.* Nep. Hieme et aestāte, *In winter and summer.* Cic.

1. DESIGNATIONS OF TIME.—Any word so used as to involve the time of an action or event may be put in the ablative: *bello*, in the time of war; *pugnā*, in the time of battle; *lūdis*, at the time of the games; *mēmōriā*, in memory, i.e., in the time of one's recollection.

EXERCISE LXIV.

I. Vocabulary.

Brūtus, i, m.	<i>Brutus, a Roman patriot.</i>
Dēflāgrō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to burn, be consumed.</i>
Dianā, ae, f.	<i>Diana, a goddess.</i>
Ephēsiūs, ā, ūm,	<i>Ephesian, of Ephesus.</i>
Hiems, hiēmīs, f.	<i>winter.</i>
Nātālis, ē,	<i>belonging to one's birth, natal.</i>
Nātālis diēs,	<i>birth-day.</i>
Pompēiūs, ii, m.	<i>Pompey, Roman general.</i>
Persae, ārūm, m. plur.	<i>Persians.</i>
Scribō, scribērē, scripsi, scriptūm,	<i>to write.</i>
Tempūs, tempōris, n.	<i>time.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Nātāli die² tuo scripsisti epistolam. 2. Eōdem die epistolam tuam accēpi.³ 3. Pompēius urbem tertio mense

¹ Anno, vere, die, hieme, and aestate are all in the Ablative, by this Rule.

² Ablative of Time, according to Rule XXVIII.

³ From accipia.

cepit
illo t
plum
Illo d

1.
at Co
in wi
ter.
in the
8. W
in tha

432
with
Ad
Into th
Before
433
Ad,
citra, c
pone, p
versus:
Ad u
434

¹ Abl
² Loc
³ The
with in,

cepit. 4. Eōdem die Persae superāti sunt. 5. Pompēius illo tempore miles fuit. 6. Illo anno Dianae Ephesiae templum deflagravit. 7. Occāsu solis hostes fugāti sunt. 8. Illo die Brutus patriam servāvit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Were you not in Athens¹ at that time? 2. We were at Corinth² at that time. 3. Do you not reside in the city¹ in winter? 4. We reside in this beautiful city in the winter. 5. The city was taken at sunset. 6. Were you not in the city at that hour? 7. I was in the city at that time. 8. Were you not in Rome² on your birth-day? 9. I was in that city on my birth-day.

SECTION VIII.

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

RULE XXXII.—Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions:

Ad amicum³ scripsi, *I have written to a friend.* Cic. In curiam, *Into the senate-house.* Liv. In Italiā, *In Italy.* Nep. Pro castris, *Before the camp.*

433. The ACCUSATIVE is used with

Ad, adversus (adversum), ante, apud, circa, circum, circiter, cis, citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, pēnes, per, pōne, post, praeter, prōpe, propter, sēcundum, supra, trans, ultra, versus:

Ad urbem, *To the city.* Cic. Adversus deos, *Toward the gods.* Cic.

434. The ABLATIVE is used with

A or ab (abs),	absque,	cōram,	cum,	de,
e or ex,	prae,	pro,	sine,	tēnus:

¹ Ablative of Place. See Rule XXVI.

² Locative. See Rule XXVI. II.

³ The Accusative *amicum* is here used with the preposition *ad*; *curiam*, with *in*; the Ablative *Italiā*, with *in*. See 435, 1.

Ab urbe, *From the city*. Caes. Cōram conventu, *In the presence of the assembly*. Nep.

435. The ACCUSATIVE or ABLATIVE is used with

In, sub, subter, sūper:

In Asiam prōfūgit, *He fled into Asia*. Cic. Hannībal in Itāliā fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy*. Nep.

1. *In* and *Sub* take the Accusative in answer to the question *whither*, the Ablative in answer to *where*: In Asiam, (*whither?*) *into Asia*; In Itāliā, (*where?*) *in Italy*.

EXERCISE LXV.

I. Vocabulary.

Adversūs, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	against.
Dimicō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to fight.
Pēr, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	of, through.
Prospērē, <i>adv.</i>	successfully.
Prōvōcō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to challenge.

II. Translate into English.

1. Lacedaemonii hostes ad *proelium* provocābant. 2. Scipio contra *Hannōnem*, ducem Carthaginiensium, prospere pugnat. 3. Caesar adversus Pompēium dimicāvit. 4. Veritas per se¹ mihi grata est. 5. Virtus per se laudabilis est. 6. Persae a *Graecis*² superāti sunt. 7. Cicero de *amicitiā* scripsit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Will not the army be led back to *the city*? 2. It has been led back to *the city*. 3. Will you not write to me? 4. I will write to you. 5. Friendship is valuable of itself. 6. Have you not received five letters from *me*? 7. I have received four letters from *you*. 8. I have received two letters from your brother.

¹ *Per se*, literally *through itself*: render *in itself* or *of itself*.

² *A Graecis*, by the Greeks. See 414, 5.

SUGGESTIONS TO THE LEARNER.

I. THE preparation of a Reading Lesson in Latin involves,

1. A knowledge of the Meaning of the Latin.
2. A knowledge of the Structure of the Latin Sentences.
3. A translation into English.

MEANING OF THE LATIN.

II. Remember that almost every inflected word in a Latin sentence requires the use of both the Dictionary and the Grammar to ascertain its meaning.

The Dictionary gives the meaning of the word, without reference to its Grammatical properties of *case, number, mood, tense, etc.*; and the Grammar, the meaning of the endings which mark these properties. The Dictionary will give the meaning of *mensa*, a table, but not of *mensarum*, of tables: the Grammar alone will give the force of the ending *arum*.

III. Make yourself so familiar with all the endings of inflection, with their exact form and force, whether in declension or conjugation, that you will not only readily distinguish the different parts of speech from each other, but also the different forms of the same word, with their exact and distinctive force.

IV. In taking up a Latin sentence,

1. Notice carefully the endings of the several words, and thus determine which words are *nouns*, which *verbs*, etc.

2. Observe the force of each ending, and thus determine *case, number, voice, mood, tense, etc.*

This will be found to be a very important step toward the mastery of the sentence. By this means, you will discover not only the relation of the words to each other, but also an important part of their meaning, — that which they derive from their endings.

V. The key to the meaning of any simple sentence (345, I.) will be found in the simple subject and predicate; i.e., in the Nominative and its Verb. Hence, in looking out the sentence, observe the following order. Take

1. The Subject, or Nominative.

The ending will, in most instances, enable you to distinguish this from all other words, except the adjectives which agree with it. These may be looked out at the same time with the subject.

Sometimes the subject is not expressed, but only implied, in the ending of the verb. It may then be readily supplied, as it is always a pronoun of such person and number as the verb indicates: as, *audio*, I hear, the ending *o* showing that the subject is *ego*; *auditis*, you hear, the ending *tis* showing that the subject is *vos*.

2. The Verb, with Predicate Noun or Adjective, if any.

This will be readily known by the ending. Now, combining this with the Subject, you will have an outline of the sentence. All the other words must now be associated with these two parts.

3. The Modifiers of the Subject; i.e., adjectives agreeing with it, nominatives in apposition with it, genitives dependent upon it, etc.

But perhaps some of these have already been looked out in the attempt to ascertain the subject.

In looking out these words, bear in mind the meaning of the subject to which they belong. This will greatly aid you in selecting from the dictionary the true meaning in the passage before you.

4. The Modifiers of the Verb, i.e. (1) Oblique cases, accusatives, datives, etc., dependent upon it, and (2) Adverbs qualifying it.

Bear in mind all the while the force of the case and the meaning of the verb, that you may be able to select for each word the true meaning in the passage before you.

VI. In complex and compound sentences (345, II., III.), discover first the connectives which unite the several members, and then proceed with each member as with a simple sentence.

V.
ber t
occu
adje
Pres
1.
decl
Nom
If
2.
with
the g
Th
in the
3.
that
Th
you w
Perf. s
To
add th

VI
liber
1. V
from t
1) '
Nom.
2) '
3) '
Accus
4) '
tense,
2. N
you wi

VII. In the use of Dictionary and Vocabulary, remember that you are not to look for the particular form which occurs in the sentence, but for the Nom. Sing. of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, and for the First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. of verbs. Therefore,

1. In Pronouns, make yourself so familiar with their declension, that any oblique case will at once suggest the Nom. Sing.

If *vobis* occurs, you must remember that the Nom. Sing. is *tu*.

2. In Nouns and Adjectives, make yourself so familiar with the case-endings, that you will be able to drop that of the given case, and substitute for it that of the Nom. Sing.

Thus *mensibus*; stem *mensi*, Nom. Sing. *mensis*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So *urbem, urb, urbs*.

3. In Verbs, change the ending of the given form into that of the First Pers. Sing. of the Pres. Indic. Act.

Thus *amābat*; stem *ama*, First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. *amo*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So *amaverunt*; First Pers. Perf. *amāvi*, Perf. stem *amav*, Verb stem *ama*; *amo*.

To illustrate the steps recommended in the preceding suggestions, we add the following

Model.

VIII. Themistōcles imperātor servitūte totam Graeciam liberāvit.

1. Without knowing the meaning of the words, you will discover from their forms,

1) That *Themistōcles* and *imperātor* are probably nouns in the Nom. Sing.

2) That *servitūte* is a noun in the Abl. Sing.

3) That *totam* and *Graeciam* are either nouns or adjectives in the Accus. Sing.

4) That *liberāvit* is a verb in the Act. voice, Indic. mood, Perf. tense, Third Person, Singular number.

2. Now, turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, you will learn,

1) That *Themistocles* is the name of an eminent Athenian general: **THEMISTOCLES**.

2) That *libero*, for which you must look, not for *liberavit*, means to liberate: **LIBERATED**.

Themistocles liberated.

3) That *imperator* means *commander*: **THE COMMANDER**.

Themistocles the commander liberated.

4) That *Graeciam* is the name of a country: **GREECE**.

Themistocles the commander liberated Greece.

5) That *totus* means *the whole, all*: **ALL**.

Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece.

6) That *servitus* means *servitude*: **FROM SERVITUDE**.

Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece from servitude.

STRUCTURE OF THE LATIN SENTENCE.

IX. The structure of a sentence is best shown by *analyzing*¹ it, and by *parsing* the words which compose it.

Parsing.

XVII.² In parsing a word,

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.
2. Inflect³ it, if capable of inflection.
3. Give its gender, number, case, voice, mood, tense, person, etc.⁴
4. Give its Syntax, and the Rule for it.⁵

TRANSLATION.

XIX. In translating, render as literally as possible without doing violence to the English.

¹ It has not been thought advisable to enter upon the subject of *analysis* at this early stage of the course. That will be presented in the Reader, which follows this work.

² These suggestions are taken, without change, from the Reader. Accordingly, the numerals are made to correspond to those in that work.

³ Inflect; i.e., decline, compare, or conjugate.

⁴ That is, such of these properties as it possesses.

⁵ For Models for Parsing, see pp. 16, 22, 27, 34, 55, 57, 59, 66, 71, and 73.

A, B
Accf
Ta
Acér
val
Acies
ile-
Ad,
nea
Admi
min
Admi
mō
Adve
Adve
Aedif
Acstā
Agér,
Aggér
par
Agís,
Spa
Albán
Alexa
der,
Alfiqu
Som
Altitis,
Aman

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

For Explanation of Abbreviations and References, see p. ix.

A.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>A, ab, <i>prep. with abl. From, by.</i></p> <p>Accipiō, accipere, accēpi, acceptum. <i>To receive.</i></p> <p>Acēr, acris, acere. <i>Sharp, severe, valiant.</i></p> <p>Acies, aciei, <i>f. Order of battle, battle-array, army.</i></p> <p>Ad, <i>prep. with acc. To, towards, near.</i></p> <p>Administrō, are, avi, atum. <i>To administer, manage.</i></p> <p>Admonēō, admōnere, admōnuī, admōnitum. <i>To admonish.</i></p> <p>Adventus, us, <i>m. Arrival, approach.</i></p> <p>Adversus, <i>prep. with acc. Against.</i></p> <p>Aedificō, are, avi, atum. <i>To build.</i></p> <p>Aestas, aestatis, <i>f. Summer.</i></p> <p>Agēr, agri, <i>m. Field, land.</i></p> <p>Agger, aggeris, <i>m. Mound, rampart.</i></p> <p>Agis, Agidis, <i>m. Agis, a king of Sparta.</i></p> <p>Albanus, a, um. <i>Alban.</i></p> <p>Alexander, Alexandri, <i>m. Alexander, the Great.</i></p> <p>Aliquis, aliqua, aliquid or aliquod. <i>Some, some one.</i></p> <p>Altus, a, um. <i>High, lofty.</i></p> <p>Amans, amantis. <i>Loving, fond of.</i></p> | <p>Ambulō, are, avi, atum. <i>To walk.</i></p> <p>Amicitia, ae, <i>f. Friendship.</i></p> <p>Amicus, a, um. <i>Friendly.</i></p> <p>Amicus, i, <i>m. Friend.</i></p> <p>Amnis, amnis, <i>m. River.</i></p> <p>Amō, are, avi, atum. <i>To love.</i></p> <p>Amor, amoris, <i>m. Love.</i></p> <p>Ampliō, are, avi, atum. <i>To enlarge.</i></p> <p>Ancus, i, <i>m. Ancus, a Roman king.</i></p> <p>Animal, animalis, <i>n. Animal.</i></p> <p>Animus, i, <i>m. Soul, mind, passion, disposition.</i></p> <p>Annulus, i, <i>m. Ring.</i></p> <p>Annus, i, <i>m. Year.</i></p> <p>Antē, <i>prep. with acc. Before.</i></p> <p>Antiquus, a, um. <i>Ancient.</i></p> <p>Apis, apis, <i>f. Bee.</i></p> <p>Appellō, are, avi, atum. <i>To call.</i></p> <p>Appetens, appetentis. <i>Desiring, striving for.</i></p> <p>Apud, <i>prep. with acc. In the presence of, near, before, among.</i></p> <p>Apulia, ae, <i>f. Apulia, a country in Italy.</i></p> <p>Arabs, Arabis, <i>m and f. Arab, an Arab.</i></p> <p>Arcte, <i>adv. Closely, soundly.</i></p> <p>Argentum, i, <i>n. Silver.</i></p> <p>Arō, are, aravi, aratum. <i>To plough.</i></p> |
|--|---|

Arrōgantiā, ac, *f.* *Arrogance.*
 Ars, artīs, *f.* *Art, skill.*
 Artāxerxēs, Is, *m.* *Artaxerxes, a Persian king.*
 Arx, arcis, *f.* *Citadel, fortress.*
 Athēnac, ārūm, *f. plur.* *Athens, the capital of Attica.*
 Athēniēnsis, ē. *Athenian.*
 Athēniēnsis, Is, *m. and f.* *Athenian, an Athenian.*
 Atticūs, ī, *m.* *Atticus, a Roman name.*
 Audiō, irē, ivi, itūm. *To hear.*
 Auditōr, auditōris, *m.* *Hearer, auditor.*
 Aureūs, ā, ūm. *Golden.*
 Aurūm, ī, *n.* *Gold.*
 Avāritiā, ae, *f.* *Avarice.*
 Avidūs, ā, ūm. *Desirous of, eager for.*
 Avis, āvis, *f.* *Bird.*

B.

Bābylōn, Bābylōnis, *f.* *Babylon, the celebrated capital of the Assyrian Empire, on the banks of the Euphrates.*
 Beātūs, ā, ūm. *Happy, blessed.*
 Bellūm, ī, *n.* *War, warfare.*
 Bēnē, *adv.* *Well.*
 Bēnignē, *adv.* *Kindly.*
 Bōnitās, bōnitātis, *f.* *Goodness, excellence.*
 Bōnūs, ā, ūm. *Good.*
 Brēvis, ē. *Short, brief.*
 Brūtūs, ī, *m.* *Brutus, a celebrated Roman patriot.*

C.

Caesār, Cacsāris, *m.* *Cæsar, a celebrated Roman commander.*
 Cāiūs, ii, *m.* *Caius, a proper name.*

Cāmillus, ī, *m.* *Camillus, a Roman general.*
 Campūs, ī, *m.* *Plain.*
 Cānis, cānis, *m. and f.* *Dog.*
 Cantō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. *To sing.*
 Cantūs, ūs, *m.* *Singing, song.*
 Cāpiō, cāpērē, cēpi, captūm. *To take, capture.*
 Cāpūt, cāptis, *n.* *Head, capital.*
 Carmēn, carminis, *n.* *Song, poem, verse.*
 Carthāgīniēnsis, ē. *Carthaginian.*
 Carthāgīniēnsis, Is, *m. and f.* *A Carthaginian.*
 Carthāgō, Carthāgīnis, *f.* *Carthage, a city of Northern Africa.*
 Carthāgō Nōvā. *New Carthage, Carthagera, a city of Spain.*
 Cārūs, ā, ūm. *Dear.*
 Cātō, Cātōnis, *m.* *Cato, a distinguished Roman.*
 Centūm. *One hundred. See 176.*
 Certāmen, certāminis, *n.* *Contest, strife, battle.*
 Cībūs, ī, *m.* *Food.*
 Cīcērō, Cīcērōnis, *m.* *Cicero, the celebrated Roman orator.*
 Cīvilis, ē. *Civil.*
 Cīvis, cīvis, *m. and f.* *Citizen.*
 Cīvītās, cīvītātis, *f.* *State, city.*
 Clārtās, ā, ūm. *Renowned, distinguished, illustrious.*
 Classis, classis, *f.* *Fleet, navy.*
 Coerceō, coercērē, coercui, coercitūm. *To check.*
 Cōlō, cōlērē, cōlui, cultūm. *To practise, cultivate.*
 Commūnis, ē. *Common.*
 Condemnō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. *To condemn.*
 Condītōr, condītōris, *m.* *Founder.*
 Conjux, conjūgis, *m. and f.* *Wife, husband, spouse.*

Cōnōn
 Ath
 Consci
 Consi
 Consp
 prese
 Consi
 Contr
 oppo
 Convō
 ble,
 Cōrint
 Gree
 Cornē
 Ron
 Cōrōn
 Corpū
 Creō,
 make
 Crūdē
 Crūdū
 Culpō,
 Cūm,
 Cūpid
 Cūrēs,
 Sabi
 Custōd
 Custōs
 guar
 Dē, pr
 Dēbeō,
 owe.
 Dēcēm
 Dēcīm
 Dēfect
 Dēfāg
 be con
 Dēlect
 pleas
 Dēmār
 rinth

Cōnōn, Cōnōnis, *m.* Conon, an Athenian general.

Conscientiā, *ae, f.* Conscientiousness.

Consiiliūm, *ii, n.* Design, plan.

Conspēctūs, *ūs, m.* Sight, view, presence.

Consul, consuliis, *m.* Consul.

Contrā, *prep. with acc.* Against, opposite to, contrary to.

Convōcō, *ārē, āvī, ātūm.* To assemble, call together.

Cōrīnthūs, *i, f.* Corinth, city in Greece.

Cornēliūs, *ii, m.* Cornelius, a Roman name.

Cōrōnā, *ae, f.* Crown.

Corpūs, corpōris, *n.* Body, person.

Creō, *ārē, āvī, ātūm.* To create, make, appoint, elect.

Crūdēlis, *ē.* Cruel.

Crūdūs, *ā, tūm.* Unripe.

Culpō, *ārē, āvī, ātūm.* To blame.

Cūm, *prep. with abl.* With.

Cūpidūs, *ā, tūm.* Desirous of.

Cūrēs, Cūriūm, *m. plur.* Cures, a Sabine town.

Custōdiō, *irē, ivī, itūm.* To guard.

Custōs, custōdis, *m. and f.* Keeper, guard.

D.

Dē, *prep. with abl.* Concerning.

Dēbēō, dēbērē, dēbuī, dēbitūm. To owe.

Dēcēm. Ten. See 176.

Dēcīmūs, *ā, tūm.* Tenth.

Dēfectiō, dēfectiōnis, *f.* Eclipse.

Dēflāgrō, *ārē, āvī, ātūm.* To burn, be consumed.

Dēlectō, *ārē, āvī, ātūm.* To delight, please.

Dēmārātūs, *i, m.* Demaratus, a Corinthian.

Dēmōsthēnēs, *is, m.* Demosthenes, the celebrated Athenian orator.

Diānā, *ae, f.* Diana, the goddess of the chase.

Dicō, dicērē, dixī, dictūm. To say, speak, tell.

Diēs, diēi, *m.* Day. See 120, note.

Diligens, diligētis. Diligent.

Diligentiā, *ae, f.* Diligence.

Dimicō, *ārē, āvī, ātūm.* To fight.

Dionysiūs, *ii, m.* Dionysius, tyrant of Syracuse.

Discipulūs, *i, m.* Pupil.

Disertē, *adv.* Clearly, eloquently.

Displicēō, displicērē, displicuī, displicitūm. To displease.

Divinūs, *ā, tūm.* Divine.

Dōlōr, dōlōris, *m.* Pain, grief, suffering.

Dōnō, *ārē, āvī, ātūm.* To give, present.

Dōnūm, *i, n.* Gift.

Dormiō, *irē, ivī, itūm.* To sleep.

Dracō, Dracōnis, *m.* Draco, an Athenian lawgiver.

Dūcenti, *ae, ā.* Two hundred.

Dūcō, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm. To lead.

Dulcis, *ē.* Sweet, pleasant.

Duō, *ae, ō.* Two. See 175.

Dūplicō, *ārē, āvī, ātūm.* To double, increase.

Dux, dūcis, *m. and f.* Leader, general.

E.

E, ex, *prep. with abl.* From.

Ebriētās, ebriētātis, *f.* Drunkenness.

Educō, educērē, eduxī, eductūm. To lead forth, lead out.

Effugiō, effugērē, effugi, effugitūm. To escape.

Egō, *met. I.* See 184.

- Egrēgiūs, ā, ūm. *Distinguished.*
 Egrēgiē, adv. *Excellently.*
 Elēphantūs, ī, m. *Elephant.*
 Elōquens, elōquentis. *Eloquent.*
 Elōquentiā, ae, f. *Eloquence.*
 Ephēsiūs, ā, ūm. *Ephesian, of Ephesus.*
 Epīrūs, ī, f. *Epirus, a country in Greece.*
 Epistōlā, ae, f. *Letter.*
 Erūdiō, irē, ivi, itum. *To instruct, refine, educate.*
 Erūdītūs, ū, ūm. *Learned, instructed in.*
 Ex, prep. with abl. *From.*
 Exereō, exercere, exercui, exercitum. *To exercise, train.*
 Exercitūs, ūs, m. *Army.*
 Expugnō, arē, avi, atum. *To take, take by storm.*
 Exspectō, arē, avi, atum. *To await, expect.*
 Exsul, exsulis, m. and f. *Exile.*
- F.
- Fāciēs, faciē, f. *Face, appearance.*
 Ferrum, ī, n. *Iron.*
 Fertilis, ē. *Fertile.*
 Fidēlitās, fidēlitātis, f. *Fidelity, faithfulness.*
 Fidēs, fidei, f. *Faith, fidelity.*
 Fidūs, ā, ūm. *Faithful.*
 Filiā, ae, f. *Daughter.*
 Filiūs, ii, m. *Son.*
 Finiō, irē, ivi, itum. *To finish, bring to a close.*
 Finis, finis, m. *Limit, territory.*
 Firmō, arē, avi, atum. *To strengthen, confirm.*
 Flāminius, ii, m. *Flaminius, a Roman general.*
 Flōs, flōris, m. *Flower.*
 Foedūs, ū, ūm. *Detestable.*
- Fons, fontis, m. *Fountain.*
 Fortis, ē. *Brave.*
 Fortitēr, adv. *Bravely.*
 Fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f. *Bravery, fortitude.*
 Fossā, ae, f. *Ditch, moat.*
 Frāter, frātris, m. *Brother.*
 Fruētūs, ūs, m. *Fruit, produce, income.*
 Frūmentum, ī, n. *Corn, grain.*
 Fūgā, ae, f. *Flight.*
 Fūgiō, fūgere, fūgi, fūgitum. *To flee, fly, run away.*
 Fūgō, arē, avi, atum. *To rout, drive away.*
 Fūnestūs, ā, ūm. *Destructive.*
 Fūrōr, fūrōris, m. *Madness, insanity.*
- G.
- Gallūs, ī, m. *Gallus, a proper name.*
 Gallūs, ī, m. *Gaul, a Gaul, an inhabitant of ancient Gaul, embracing modern France.*
 Gemmā, ae, f. *Gem.*
 Gēnēr, gēneri, m. *Son-in-law.*
 Gens, gentis, f. *Race.*
 Germāniā, ae, f. *Germany.*
 Glādiūs, ii, m. *Sword.*
 Glōbōsus, ā, ūm. *Spherical.*
 Glōriā, ae, f. *Glory.*
 Graeciā, ae, f. *Greece.*
 Graecūs, ā, ūm. *Grecian, Greek.*
 Graecūs, ī, m. *Greek, a Greek.*
 Grātiā, ae, f. *Favor, gratitude, thanks.*
 Grātūs, ā, ūm. *Acceptable, pleasing.*
 Grex, grēgis, m. *Herd, flock.*
- II.
- Hābeō, habere, habui, habitum. *To have, hold.*
 Hābitō, arē, avi, atum. *To dwell, reside.*

Hannib
 bal,
 gener
 Hannō,
 Cartl
 Hastā,
 Hē, ha
 Hiems,
 Htrund
 Hispani
 Hispani
 Hōmēri
 brate
 Hōmō,
 Hōnōr,
 Hōrā, a
 Hostis,

Idēm,
 same.
 Ignōrō,
 ignor
 Illē, illā
 186.
 Illustrō
 trate,
 Imāgō,
 Impātic
 Impērā
 mand
 Impēriū
 erume
 Impētū
 Imprōbi
 edness
 In, prep
 in, wi
 Incertū
 Indicō,
 To de
 Infestō,
 Ingens,

- Hannibāl, Hannibālīs, *m.* *Hannibal*, a celebrated Carthaginian general.
- Hannō, Hannōnīs, *m.* *Hunno*, a Carthaginian general.
- Hastā, *ae, f.* *Spear.*
- Hic, haec, hoc. *This.*
- Hiems, hiemīs, *f.* *Winter.*
- Hirundō, hirundīnīs, *f.* *Swallow.*
- Hispāniā, *ae, f.* *Spain.*
- Hispānūs, *i, m.* *A Spaniard.*
- Hōmērūs, *i, m.* *Homer*, the celebrated Grecian poet.
- Hōmō, hōmīnīs, *m.* *Man.*
- Hōnōr, hōnōrīs, *m.* *Honor.*
- Hōrā, *ae, f.* *Hour.*
- Hostīs, hostīs, *m. and f.* *Enemy.*
- I.*
- Idēm, eādēm, idēm. *Same, the same.* See 186.
- Ignōrō, arē, avi, atum. *To be ignorant of, not to know.*
- Illē, illā, illud. *That, he, she, it.* See 186.
- Illustrō, arē, avi, atum. *To illustrate, illumine.*
- Imāgō, Imāgīnīs, *f.* *Image, picture.*
- Impātiens, impātiētīs, *Impatient.*
- Impērātōr, impērātōrīs, *m.* *Commander.*
- Impēriūm, *ii, n.* *Reign, power, government.*
- Impētūs, *ūs, m.* *Attack.*
- Imprōbitās, imprōbitātīs, *f.* *Wickedness.*
- In, *prep. with acc. and abl.* *Into, in, within.*
- Incertūs, *ū, ūm.* *Uncertain.*
- Indicō, indicērē, indixī, indietum. *To declare.*
- Infestō, arē, avi, atum. *To infest.*
- Ingens, ingentīs. *Huge, large, great.*
- Innocens, innocentīs. *Innocent.*
- Insāniā, *ae, f.* *Insanity.*
- Insulā, *ae, f.* *Island.*
- Intēr, *prep. with acc.* *Between, among, in the midst of.*
- Intrō, arē, avi, atum. *To enter.*
- Inventōr, inventōrīs, *m.* *Inventor.*
- Invitō, arē, avi, atum. *To invite.*
- Ipsē, ipsā, ipsum. *Self, he, himself.* See 186.
- Is, eā, id. *That, he, she, it.*
- Istē, istā, istud. *That, such.* See 186.
- Italiā, *ae, f.* *Italy.*
- J.*
- Jaciō, jacērē, jēcī, jactum. *To cast, throw, hurl.*
- Jām, *adv.* *Now, already.*
- Jūcundūs, *ū, ūm.* *Delightful, pleasant.*
- Jūdex, jūdicīs, *m. and f.* *Judge.*
- Jungō, jungērē, junxī, junctum. *To join.*
- Justitiā, *ae, f.* *Justice.*
- Justūs, *ū, ūm.* *Upright, just.*
- Jūvenīs, jūvenīs, *m. and f.* *A youth, young man.*
- Jūventūs, jūventūtīs, *f.* *Youth, a youth, a young person.*
- L.*
- Lābōr, lābōrīs, *m.* *Labor.*
- Lābōrō, arē, avi, atum. *To strive for, labor, work.*
- Lācēdaemōniūs, *ii, m.* *Spartan, a Spartan, inhabitant of Sparta in Greece.*
- Laetitiā, *ae, f.* *Joy.*
- Lāpīs, lāpīdīs, *m.* *Stone.*
- Lātinē, *adv.* *In Latin.*
- Lātīnūs, *i, m.* *Latinus, a Latin king.*
- Lātūs, *ū, ūm.* *Broad.*

- Laudābīlis, ē. *Praiseworthy, laudable.*
 Laudō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To praise.*
 Laus, laudīs, *f. Praise.*
 Lāvīniā, ac, *f. Lavinia, a proper name.*
 Lēgātīō, lēgātīōnis, *f. Embassy.*
 Lēgātūs, ī, *m. Ambassador.*
 Lēgiō, lēgiōnis, *f. Legion, a body of soldiers.*
 Lēgō, lēgērē, lēgī, lectūm. *To choose, appoint.*
 Leō, leōnis, *m. Lion.*
 Lētālis, ē. *Mortal, deadly.*
 Lex, lēgis, *f. Law.*
 Lībēr, lībrī, *m. Book.*
 Lībērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To liberate.*
 Libertās, libertātīs, *f. Liberty.*
 Longūs, ā, ūm. *Long.*
 Lūcūs, ī, *m. Grove.*
 Lūnā, ac, *f. Moon.*
 Luscīniā, ac, *f. Nightingale.*
 Lux, lūcis, *f. Light.*
 Luxūriā, ac, *f. Luxury.*
 Lūcūrgūs, ī, *m. Lycurgus, a Spartan lawgiver.*
 Lūsandēr, Lūsandri, *m. Lysander, a Spartan general.*
- M.**
- Mācēdōniā, ac, *f. Macedonia, Macedonia, a country of Northern Greece.*
 Māgīstēr, māgīstrī, *m. Master, teacher.*
 Magnōpērē, *adv. Greatly.*
 Magnūs, ā, ūm. *Great, large.*
 Mālūm, ī, *n. Evil.*
 Marcellūs, ī, *m. Marcellus, a celebrated Roman general.*
 Mārē, mārīs, *n. Sea.*
 Mātēr, mātīs, *f. Mother.*
 Mātūrūs, ā, ūm. *Ripe.*
 Mēmōriā, ac, *f. Memory.*
- Mensū, ac, *f. Table.*
 Mensis, mensīs, *m. Month.*
 Mercēs, mercēdis, *f. Reward.*
 Mērēō, mērērē, mērui, mērītūm. *To deserve, merit.*
 Mētūs, ā, ūm. *My. See 185.*
 Milēs, milītīs, *m. Soldier.*
 Miltiādēs, īs, *m. Miltiades, an Athenian general.*
 Mōdestiā, ac, *f. Modesty.*
 Mōnēō, mōnērē, mōnuī, mōnītūm. *To advise.*
 Mons, montīs, *m. Mountain.*
 Monstrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To show, point out.*
 Mōrā, ac, *f. Delay.*
 Mors, mortīs, *f. Death.*
 Multītūdō, multītūdīnis, *f. Multitude.*
 Multūs, ā, ūm. *Much, many.*
 Mundūs, ī, *m. World, universe.*
 Mūniō, irē, īvī, ītūm. *To fortify, defend.*
 Mūnūs, mūnērīs, *n. Gift, present.*
 Mūrūs, ī, *m. Wall.*
 Mūtātiō, mūtātiōnis, *f. Change, phase.*
- N.**
- Nātālis, ē. *Belonging to one's birth, natal.*
 Nātālis diēs. *Birth-day.*
 Nātūrā, ac, *f. Nature.*
 Nāvālis, ē. *Naval.*
 Nāvīgō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To sail to.*
 Nāvis, nāvīs, *f. Ship.*
 Nēcēssāriūs, ā, ūm. *Necessary.*
 Nēcēssītās, nēcēssītātīs, *f. Necessity.*
 Nēpōs, nēpōtīs, *m. Grandson.*
 Nōbīlis, ē. *Noble.*
 Nōmēn, nōmīnis, *n. Name.*
 Nōmīnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To call, name.*

Nōn, a
 Nonnē
 answ
 Nostēr
 own,
 Nōvītā
 Nōvūs,
 Nox, n
 Nūbēs,
 Nūm,
 answ
 Nūmā,
 Nūmēr
 Numm
 none,
 Nuntīō
 anno

Obsēs,
 Occāstī
 Occūpō
 take p
 Octāvū
 Octō.
 Octōgin
 Oculūs,
 Ōdiōstūs
 Omnis,
 Oppīdū
 Oppugn
 siege,
 Optō, ā
 desire
 Opulent
 Opūs, ō
 Orātiō,
 Orātor,
 Orbīs, o
 Orbīs te
 Ornō, ā
 an orn
 Ovīs, ōv

Nōn, *adv. Not.*
Nonnē, *interrog. part.* Expects the answer, *Yes.* See 346, II., 2.
Nostēr, *nostrā, nostrūm.* *Our, our own, ours.*
Nōvītās, *nōvītātīs, f.* *Novelty.*
Nōvūs, *ā, ūm.* *New.*
Nox, *noctīs, f.* *Night.*
Nūbēs, *nūbīs, f.* *Cloud.*
Nūm, *interrog. part.* Expects the answer, *No.* See 346, II., 1.
Nūmā, *ae, m.* *Numa, a Roman king.*
Nūmērūs, *i, m.* *Number, quantity.*
Nummūs, *i, m.* *Money, a piece of money, a coin.*
Nuntiō, *ārē, āvī, ātūm.* *To proclaim, announce.*

O.

Obsēs, *obsidīs, m. and f.* *Hostage.*
Occāsūs, *ūs, m.* *Setting, going down.*
Occūpō, *ārē, āvī, ātūm.* *To occupy, take possession of.*
Octāvūs, *ā, ūm.* *Eighth.*
Octō. *Eight.* See 176.
Octōgintā. *Eighty.* See 176.
Ocūlūs, *i, m.* *Eye.*
Odiōsūs, *ā, ūm.* *Odious, hateful.*
Omnīs, *ē.* *All, every, whole.*
Oppidūm, *i, n.* *Town, city.*
Oppugnō, *ārē, āvī, ātūm.* *To besiege, take by storm.*
Optō, *ārē, āvī, ātūm.* *To wish for, desire.*
Opulētūs, *ā, ūm.* *Rich, opulent.*
Opūs, *ōpērīs, n.* *Work.*
Orātiō, *ōrātiōnīs, f.* *Oration, speech.*
Orātōr, *ōrātōrīs, m.* *Orator.*
Orbīs, *orbīs, m.* *Circle.*
Orbīs terrārūm. *The world.*
Ornō, *ārē, āvī, ātūm.* *To adorn, be an ornament to.*
Ovis, *ovīs, f.* *Sheep.*

P.

Pārens, *pārentīs, m. and f.* *Parent.*
Pāreō, *pārērē, pārui, pārītūm.* *To obey.*
Pars, *partīs, f.* *Part, portion.*
Parvūs, *ā, ūm.* *Small.*
Passēr, *passērīs, m.* *Sparrow.*
Pastōr, *pastōrīs, m.* *Shepherd.*
Pātēr, *pātrīs, m.* *Father.*
Pātriā, *ae, f.* *Native country, country.*
Paulūs, *i, m.* *Paulus, a Roman consul.*
Pax, *pācis, f.* *Peace.*
Pēcūniā, *ae, f.* *Money.*
Pellis, *pellīs, f.* *Skin, hide.*
Pēr, *prep. with acc.* *Of, through.*
Pērāgrō, *ārē, āvī, ātūm.* *To wander through.*
Pērītūs, *ā, ūm.* *Skilled in.*
Persā, *ae, m.* *A Persian.*
Pēs, *pēdīs, m.* *Foot.*
Philippūs, *i, m.* *Philip, king of Macedon.*
Philōsōphiā, *ae, f.* *Philosophy.*
Philōsōphūs, *i, m.* *Philosopher.*
Piētās, *piētātīs, f.* *Filial affection, piety, duty.*
Pirātā, *ae, m.* *Pirate.*
Piscīs, *piscīs, m.* *Fish.*
Pisistrātūs, *i, m.* *Pisistratus, tyrant of Athens.*
Plāceō, *plācērē, plācui, plācītūm.* *To please.*
Plētūs, *ā, ūm.* *Full.*
Poenūs, *ā, ūm.* *Carthaginian.*
Poenus, *i, m.* *A Carthaginian.*
Pōmūm, *i, n.* *Fruit.*
Pomplliūs, *ii, m.* *Pompilius, a Roman name.*
Pompēiūs, *ii, m.* *Pompey, a celebrated Roman general.*
Pondūs, *pondērīs, n.* *Weight, mass.*

Portūs, ūs, *m.* *Port, harbor.*
 Post, *prep. with acc.* *After.*
 Pōtens, pōtentis. *Powerful, able.*
 Praebō, praebērē, praebui, praebūtīm. *To show, furnish, give.*
 Praeceptōr, praecēptōris, *m.* *Teacher, instructor.*
 Praeceptūm, ī, *n.* *Rule, precept.*
 Praeclārtis, ā, ūm. *Renowned, distinguished.*
 Praedīcō, praedicērē, praedixi, praedictūm. *To predict, foretell.*
 Praemīum, īi, *n.* *Reward.*
 Prātūm, ī, *n.* *Meadow.*
 Prētiōsus, ā, ūm. *Valuable.*
 Prīmūs, ā, ūm. *First.*
 Principiūm, īi, *n.* *Beginning.*
 Prō, *prep. with abl.* *In behalf of, for.*
 Proeliūm, īi, *n.* *Battle.*
 Prospērē, *adv.* *Successfully.*
 Prōvōcō, arē, āvi, ātūm. *To challenge.*
 Prūdentiā, ae, *f.* *Prudence.*
 Publītis, īi, *m.* *Publius, a Roman name.*
 Puellā, ae, *f.* *Girl.*
 Puēr, puērī, *m.* *Boy.*
 Pugnā, ae, *f.* *Battle.*
 Pugnō, arē, āvi, ātūm. *To fight.*
 Pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm. *Beautiful.*
 Pūnicūs, ā, ūm. *Carthaginian, Punic.*
 Pyrrhūs, ī, *m.* *Pyrrhus, a king of Epirus.*

Q.

Quām, *conj.* *Than.*
 Quartūs, ā, ūm. *Fourth.*
 Quattuōr. *Four.* See 176.
 Quī, quae, quōd, *rel. pronoun.* *Who, which, what.* See 187.

Quinquāgintā. *Fifty.* See 176.

Quinquē. *Five.* See 176.

Quintūs, ā, ūm. *Fifth.*

Quīs, quae, quid? *interrog. pronoun.* *Who, which, what?* See 188.

Quivīs, quaevis, quodvis, or quidvis, *indef. pronoun.* *Whoever, whatever.* See 190.

Quōtīdiāntis, ā, ūm. *Daily.*

Quōtīdiē, *adv.* *Daily.*

R.

Rāmūs, ī, *m.* *Branch.*

Rātiō, rātiōnis, *f.* *Reason.*

Rectē, *adv.* *Rightly.*

Rectūm, ī, *n.* *Right, rectitude.*

Rēducō, rēducērē, rēduxī, rēductūm.

To lead back.

Rēginā, ae, *f.* *Queen.*

Rēgiō, rēgiōnis, *f.* *Region, territory.*

Rēgūlīs, ī, *m.* *Regulus, a Roman general.*

Regnō, arē, āvi, ātūm. *To reign.*

Regnūm, ī, *n.* *Kingdom, royal authority.*

Rēgō, rēgērē, rexī, rectūm. *To rule.*

Rēnōvō, arē, āvi, ātūm. *To renew.*

Rēs, rei, *f.* *Thing, affair.*

Rēs publicā, *Republic.*

Rēvōcō, arē, āvi, ātūm. *To recall.*

Rex, rēgis, *m.* *King.*

Rhēnūs, ī, *m.* *Rhine.*

Rōmā, ae, *f.* *Rome.*

Rōmānūs, ā, ūm. *Roman.*

Rōmānūs, ī, *m.* *Roman, a Roman.*

Rōmūlūs, ī, *m.* *Romulus, the founder of Rome.*

S.

Sāguntūm, ī, *n.* *Saguntum, a town in Spain.*

Sālūs,
 Sālūtā
 ad
 Sālūtō
 Sanct
 Sāpien
 Sāpien
 Sāpien
 Schōl
 Scient
 Scīpiō,
 ting
 Scribō,
 To u
 Scyth
 ans.
 Sēcund
 able.
 Sempē
 Sēnātō
 Sēnātū
 Sēnect
 Sensūs,
 sense.
 Sentent
 Sermō,
 versat
 Serviō,
 Serviūs
 prope
 Servō, i
 keep,
 Servūs,
 Sex. S
 Sīciliā,
 Sīlentū
 Sīmīlīs,
 Singulā
 Sōcēr, s
 Sōciūs,
 Sōcrātēs
 brated
 Sōl, sol

- Sálus, sálutis, *f.* *Safety.*
 Sálutáris, *ē.* *Beneficial, salutary, advantageous.*
 Sálutō, árē, ávi, átum. *To salute.*
 Sanctūs, ū, ūm. *Holy, sacred.*
 Sápientis, sápiētis. *Wise.*
 Sápientēr, *adv.* *Wisely.*
 Sápientiā, *ae, f.* *Wisdom.*
 Schōlā, *ae, f.* *School.*
 Scientiā, *ae, f.* *Knowledge.*
 Scipiō, Scipiōnis, *m.* *Scipio, a distinguished Roman.*
 Scribō, scribēre, scripsi, scriptum. *To write.*
 Scythae, árūm, *m. plur.* *The Scythians.*
 Sēcundūs, ū, ūm. *Second, favorable.*
 Sempēr, *adv.* *Always, ever.*
 Sēnātor, sēnātoris, *m.* *Senator.*
 Sēnātūs, ūs, *m.* *Senate.*
 Sēnectūs, sēnectūtis, *f.* *Old age.*
 Sensūs, ūs, *m.* *Feeling, perception, sense.*
 Sententiā, *ae, f.* *Opinion.*
 Sermō, sermōnis, *m.* *Discourse, conversation.*
 Serviō, irē, ivi, itum. *To serve.*
 Serviūs, ii, *m.* *Servius, a Roman proper name.*
 Servō, árē, ávi, átum. *To preserve, keep, save.*
 Servūs, i, *m.* *Slave.*
 Sex. *Six.* See 176. ..
 Siciliā, *ae, f.* *Sicily.*
 Silentiūm, ii, *n.* *Silence.*
 Símilis, *ē.* *Like.*
 Singuláris, *ē.* *Remarkable, singular.*
 Sōcēr, sōcēri, *m.* *Father-in-law.*
 Sōciūs, ii, *m.* *Ally, associate.*
 Sōcrátēs, Is, *m.* *Socrates, the celebrated Athenian philosopher.*
 Sól, sōlis, *m.* *Sun.*
 Sólōn, Sólōnis, *m.* *Solon, an Athenian legislator.*
 Sólūm, i, *n.* *Soil.*
 Spartā, *ae, f.* *Sparta, capital of Laconia.*
 Spēciēs, spēciēi, *f.* *Appearance.*
 Spērō, árē, ávi, átum. *To hope.*
 Spēs, spēi, *f.* *Hope.*
 Spōliō, árē, ávi, átum. *To rob, spoil, despoil.*
 Stímulō, árē, ávi, átum. *To stimulate.*
 Stultitiā, *ae, f.* *Folly.*
 Sui, sibi. *Himself, herself, itself.*
 See 184.
 Sūm, essē, fuī. *To be.* See 204.
 Sūpērō, árē, ávi, átum. *To conquer.*
 Supplicium, ii, *n.* *Punishment.*
 Suūs, ū, ūm. *His, her, its, their, his own, her own, its own, their own.*
 Sýracūsae, árūm, *f. plur.* *Syracuse, a city of Sicily.*
- T.
- Táceō, tácēre, tácui, tácitum. *To be silent.*
 Tārentūm, i, *n.* *Tarentum, an Italian town.*
 Tarquiniūs, ii, *m.* *Tarquin, a Roman king.*
 Tēlūm, i, *n.* *Javelin, weapon.*
 Tēmēritās, tēmēritātis, *f.* *Rashness.*
 Templūm, i, *n.* *Temple.*
 Tempūs, tempōris, *n.* *Time.*
 Terrā, *ae, f.* *Land, earth.*
 Terrēō, terrēre, terrui, territum. *To frighten, terrify.*
 Tertiūs, ū, ūm. *Third.*
 Thālēs, Is, *m.* *Thales, a Grecian philosopher.*
 Thēbānis, ū, ūm. *Theban, belonging to Thebes (a city in Greece).*

- Thēbāntūs, i, m. *A Theban.*
 Thēmistōclēs, Is, m. *Themistocles, a celebrated Athenian.*
 Thrāsýbúlūs, i, m. *Thrasybulus, the liberator of Athens.*
 Ticínūs, i, m. *Ticinus, a river of Cisalpine Gaul.*
 Trēs, triā. *Three. See 175.*
 Trigintā. *Thirty. See 176.*
 Triumphō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To triumph.*
 Trōjā, ae, f. *Troy, ancient city in Asia Minor.*
 Tū, tuī. *Thou, you. See 184.*
 Tulliā, ae, f. *Tullia, a Roman proper name.*
 Tullūs, i, m. *Tullus, a Roman king.*
 Tūm, adv. *Then, at that time.*
 Turrīs, turrīs, f. *Tower.*
 Tuūs, ā, ūm. *Your, yours, thy, thine.*
 Tyrānnūs, i, m. *Tyrant.*
 Týriūs, ā, ūm. *Tyrian.*
- U.
- Ulyssēs, Is, m. *Ulysses, a Grecian king.*
 Unīversūs, ā, ūm. *All, the whole, entire.*
 Unūs, ā, ūm. *One. See 175.*
 Urbs, urbīs, f. *City.*
 Usūs, ūs, m. *Use.*
 Utīlīs, ē. *Useful.*
- V.
- Valētūdō, valētūdīnīs, f. *Health.*
 Variētās, variētātīs, f. *Variety.*
 Vāriūs, ā, ūm. *Various.*
 Varrō, varrōnīs, m. *Varro, a Roman consul.*
 Vēr, vēris, n. *Spring.*
 Verbūm, i, n. *Word.*
- Vērecundiā, ae, f. *Modesty.*
 Vērītās, vēritātīs, f. *Truth, verity.*
 Vērūs, ā, ūm. *True, real.*
 Vērūm, i, n. *Truth.*
 Vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm. *Your.*
 Vestiō, irē, īvi, itūm. *To clothe.*
 Viā, ae, f. *Way, road.*
 Victōr, victōris, m. *Victor, conqueror.*
 Victōriā, ae, f. *Victory.*
 Victōriā, ae, f. *Victoria, Queen of England.*
 Vigīlō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To watch, be awake.*
 Vīlīs, ē. *Cheap.*
 Vīdex, vīdētīs, m. and f. *Vindicator, avenger.*
 Vīolō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To violate.*
 Vīr, vīri, m. *Man, hero, soldier.*
 Virgō, virgīnīs, f. *Maiden, girl.*
 Virtūs, virtūtīs, f. *Valor, virtue.*
 Vitā, ae, f. *Life.*
 Vītūm, īi, n. *Fault, vice.*
 Vītūpērō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To find fault with, censure, blame.*
 Vīvō, vīvērē, vixī, vīctūm. *To live, reside.*
 Vōcō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To call.*
 Vōlō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To fly.*
 Vōluntāriūs, ā, ūm. *Voluntary.*
 Vōluptās, vōluptātīs, f. *Pleasure.*
 Vox, vōcīs, f. *Voice.*
 Vulnērō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To wound.*
 Vulnūs, vulnērīs, n. *Wound.*
 Vultūr, vultūrīs, m. *Vulture.*
 Vultūs, ūs, m. *Countenance.*
- X.
- Xerxēs, Is, m. *Xerxes, a Persian king.*

A, a
 La
 no
 Acc
 Adm
 mō
 Ador
 Adv
 tūm
 After
 Agai
 Sor
 Alex
 All
 Alwa
 Anno
 Appo
 Army
 Arriv
 At. L
 or o
 Athen
 Athen
 sis, t
 Athen
 Attack
 Await
 Battle
 Battle
 Be. S

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

- A, an.** *Not to be translated, as the Latin has no article.* See p. 12, note 1.
- Acceptable.** *Grātūs, ā, ūm.*
- Admonish.** *Admōnēb, admōnērē, admōnūi, admōnītūm.*
- Adorned.** *Ornātūs, ā, ūm.*
- Advise.** *Mōnēb, mōnērē, mōnūi, mōnītūm.*
- After.** *Post, prep. with acc.*
- Against.** *Contrā, prep. with acc.*
Sometimes denoted by the Dative.
- Alexander.** *Alexandēr, Alexandri, m.*
- All.** *Omnīs, ē.*
- Always.** *Sempēr, adv.*
- Announce.** *Nuntiō, ārē, āvi, ātūm.*
- Appoint.** *Creō, ārē, āvi, ātūm.*
- Army.** *Exercitūs, ūs, m.*
- Arrival.** *Adventūs, ūs, m.*
- At.** *Denoted by the Ablative of Place, or of Time.* See 421 and 426.
- Athenian.** *Athēniensīs, ē.*
- Athenian, an Athenian.** *Athēniensīs, is, m. and f.*
- Athens.** *Athēnāe, ārum f. plur.*
- Attack.** *Impētūs, ūs, m.*
- Await.** *Expectō, ārē, āvi, ātūm.*

B.

- Battle.** *Proeliūm, ū, n.*
- Battle-array.** *Acies, eī, f.*
- Be.** *Sūm, easē, sū.*

- Be silent.** *Taceō, tacērē, tacui, tacitūm.*
- Beautiful.** *Pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm.*
- Before.** *Antē, prep. with acc.*
- Bird.** *Avīs, ūvis, f.*
- Birth-day.** *Nātālis diēs, m.*
- Blame.** *Vitūpērō, ārē, āvi, ātūm.*
- Book.** *Liber, librī, m.*
- Boy.** *Puer, puērī, m.*
- Brave.** *Fortis, ē.*
- Bravely.** *Fortitēr, adv.*
- Bravery.** *Virtūs, virtūtis, f.*
- Bring to a close.** *Finiō, irē, iri, itūm.*
- Brother.** *Frāter, frātēr, m.*
- Brutus.** *Brūtus, ī, m.*
- By.** *A, ab, prep. with abl.* Often denoted by the Ablative alone. See 414.

C.

- Caius.** *Caiūs, ū, m.*
- Call.** *Vocō, ārē, āvi, ātūm.*
- Camillus.** *Cāmillūs, ī, m.*
- Campanian, of Campania.** *Campānūs, ū, m.*
- Carthage.** *Carthāgō, Carthāgōnis, f.*
- Carthaginian.** *Carthāgōniensīs, ē.*
- Carthaginian, a Carthaginian.** *Carthāgōniensīs, is, m. and f.*
- Cato.** *Cātō, Cātōnis, m.*
- Cicero.** *Cicērō, Cicērōnis, m.*

- Citizen. *Civis, civis, m. and f.*
 City. *Urbs, urbs, f.*
 Cloud. *Nubēs, nubēs, f.*
 Commander. *Impērātor, impērātoris, m.*
 Concerning. *Dē, prep. with abl.*
 Consul. *Consul, consuls, m.*
 Contrary to. *Contrā, prep. with acc.*
 Conversation. *Sermō, sermōnis, m.*
 Corinth. *Cōrinthūs, i, f.*
 Corinthian. *Cōrinthiūs, ā, ūm.*
 Corinthian, a Corinthian. *Cōrinthiūs, i, m.*
 Cornelius. *Cornēliūs, i, m.*
 Correct. *Corrigō, corrigēre, corraxi, correctum.*
 Country. *Pātriā, ae, f.*
 Courage. *Virtūs, virtūtis, f.*
 Crown. *Cōronā, ae, f.*
- D.**
- Daily. *Quōtidianūs, ā, ūm.*
 Daughter. *Filiā, ae, f.*
 Day. *Diēs, diēi, m.* See 120, note.
 Dear. *Cārūs, ā, ūm.*
 Declare. *Indicō, indicēre, dixi, indictum.*
 Delight. *Dēlectō, arē, avi, atum.*
 Desirous of. *Cūpidūs, ā, ūm; avidūs, ā, ūm.*
 Did. *Often the sign of the Imperfect, or of the Perfect tense, especially in questions.*
 Diligence. *Diligentiā, ae, f.*
 Diligent. *Diligens, diligentis.*
 Do. *Often the sign of the Present tense, especially in questions.*
- E.**
- Eight. *Octō.* See 176.
 Eighth. *Octāvūs, ā, ūm.*
 Enemy. *Hostis, hostis, m. and f.*
- Exercise. *Exercō, exercēre, exercui, exercitum.*
 Exile. *Exsul, exsul, m. and f.*
 Expect. *Expectō, arē, avi, atum.*
- F.**
- Father. *Pāter, patris, m.*
 Father-in-law. *Sōcēr, soceri, m.*
 Fertile. *Fertilis, e.*
 Fidelity. *Fidēs, fidēi, f.*
 Field. *Agēr, agrī, m.*
 Fifth. *Quintūs, ū, ūm.*
 Fifty. *Quinquāgintā.* See 176.
 Fight. *Pugnō, are, avi, atum.*
 Finish. *Finis, irē, ivi, itum.*
 Five. *Quinquē.* See 176.
 Flee. *Fūgō, fugēre, fugi, fugitum.*
 Flower. *Flōs, flōris, m.*
 Fly. *Vōlō, arē, avi, atum.*
 Foot. *Pēs, pedis, m.*
 Fond of. *Amans, amantis.*
 For. *Prō, prep. with abl.* In the sense of *because of*, it is denoted by the Ablative alone (414); and in the sense of *for the benefit of*, by the Dative (384).
 Fortify. *Mūnō, irē, ivi, itum.*
 Four. *Quattuor.* See 176.
 Fourth. *Quartūs, ū, ūm.*
 Friend. *Amicus, i, m.*
 Friendship. *Amicitia, ae, f.*
 From. *A, ab, prep. with abl.*
 Fruit. *Fructūs, ūs, m.*
- G.**
- Garden. *Hortūs, i, m.*
 Gaul. *Gallūs, i, m.*
 Gem. *Gemmā, ae, f.*
 General. *Dux, ducis, m. and f.*
 Gift. *Dōnūm, i, n.*
 Glory. *Glōriā, ae, f.*
 Gold. *Aurūm, i, n.*
 Golden. *Aureūs, ā, ūm.*

Good
 Good
 Gove
 Grea
 Gree
 Grov
 Guar
 Had.
 sect
 Hann
 Happ
 Have.
 Som
 Per
 He, s
 illū
 plie
 He hi
 Hear.
 High.
 Himse
 ipsū
 His.
 Hope
 Hope
 Hour.
 Hunder
 I. Eg
 In. In
 In beha
 Instruc
 Instruc
 m.
 Into.
 Invite.
 Iron.
 Island.
 It. See
 Italy.

Good. *Bōnūs, ā, ūm.*
 Goodness. *Bōnitās, bōnitātis, f.*
 Govern. *Rēgō, rēgērē, rēxi, rectum.*
 Great. *Magnūs, ā, ūm.*
 Greece. *Græciā, ae, f.*
 Grove. *Lūcūs, ī, m.*
 Guard. *Custōdiō, irē, ivi, itūm.*

H.

Had. *Often the sign of the Pluperfect tense.*
 Hannibal. *Hannibāl, Hannibālts, m.*
 Happy. *Beātūs, ā, ūm.*
 Have. *Hābēō, hābērē, hābui, hābitūm.*
 Sometimes simply the sign of the Perfect tense; as, we have loved.
 He, she, it. *Is, eā, id; illē, illā, illūd.* The pronoun is often implied in the ending of the verb.
 He himself. *Ipsē, ipsā, ipsūm.*
 Hear. *Audiō, irē, ivi, itūm.*
 High. *Altūs, altā, altūm.*
 Himself. *Sui (184); ipsē, ipsā, ipsūm.*
 His. *Suūs, ā, ūm.*
 Hope (verb). *Spērō, arē, avi, atūm.*
 Hope (noun). *Spēs, spēi, f.*
 Hour. *Hōrā, ae, f.*
 Hundred. *Centūm.* See 176.

I.

I. *Egō, meī.* See 184.
 In. *In, prep. with abl.*
 In behalf of. *Prō, prep. with abl.*
 Instruct. *Erūdiō, irē, ivi, itūm.*
 Instructor. *Praeceptōr, praeceptōrts, m.*
 Into. *In, prep. with acc.*
 Invite. *Invitō, arē, avi, atūm.*
 Iron. *Ferrūm, ī, n.*
 Island. *Insulā, ae, f.*
 It. See *he, she, it.*
 Italy. *Italiā, ae, f.*

J.

Judge. *Jūdex, jūdētis, m. and f.*
 Justice. *Iustitiā, ae, f.*

K.

Keep one's word. *Fidēiā servārē.*
 See p. 74, note 4.
 Kindly. *Bēnignē, adv.*
 King. *Rex, rēgts, m.*
 Knowledge. *Scientiā, ae, f.*

L.

Large. *Magnūs, ā, ūm.*
 Latinus. *Lātinūs, ī, m.*
 Lavinia. *Lāviniā, ae, f.*
 Law. *Lex, lēgts, f.*
 Lead. *Ducō, ducērē, duxi, ductūm.*
 Lead back. *Rēducō, rēducērē, rēduxī, rēductūm.*
 Lead forth. *Educō, educērē, eduxī, eductūm.*
 Let. *Render by the Subjunctive.* See 196, I., 2.
 Leader. *Dux, dūctis, m. and f.*
 Letter. *Epistolā, ae, f.*
 Liberate. *Libērō, arē, avi, atūm.*
 Life. *Vitā, ae, f.*
 Like. *Similts, ē.*
 Love. *Amō, arē, avi, atūm.*

M.

Macedonia. *Mācēdōniā, ae, f.*
 Man. *Hōmō, hōmīnīs, m. Vir, viri, m.* The latter is used as a term of respect; a true or worthy man, a hero.
 Many. *Multī, ae, ā, plur.*
 May. *A sign of the Present Subjunctive.*
 May have. *A sign of the Perfect Subjunctive.*
 Me. See *I.*
 Memory. *Mēmōriā, ae, f.*

Might, would, should. *Signs of the Imperfect Subjunctive.*

Might have, would have, should have. *Signs of the Pluperfect Subjunctive.*

Mind. *Anĩmũs, ĩ, m.*

Moat. *Fossã, ae, f.*

Money. *Pěcũniã, ae, f.*

Month. *Mensĩs, mensĩs, m.*

More. *Sign of the Comparative degree.* See 160.

Most. *Sign of the Superlative degree.* See 160.

Mound. *Aggěr, aggěrĩs, m.*

Mountain. *Mons, montĩs, m.*

Much. *Multũm, adv.*

My. *Meũs, ã, ũm.* See 185.

N.

Name. *Nõmẽn, nõmĩnĩs, n.*

Nightingale. *Lusctniã, ae, f.*

Noble. *Nõblĩs, ě.*

Not. *Nõn, adv.* Interrogative, *nõnẽ.*

O.

Obey. *Pãrẽð, pãrẽrẽ, pãruĩ, pãrĩtũm.*

Observe. *Servõ, ãrẽ, ãvi, ãtũm.*

Occupy. *Occũpõ, ãrẽ, ãvi, ãtũm.*

Of. *Denoted by the Genitive.* See 393.

Of itself. *Pěr sẽ.*

On. *Often denoted by the Ablative of Time.* See 426.

One. *Unũs, ã, ũm.* See 175.

Oration. *Orãtĩõ, õrãtĩõnĩs, f.*

Orator. *Orãtõr, õrãtõrĩs, m.*

Our. *Nostěr, trã, trũm.*

P.

Parent. *Pãrens, pãrentĩs, m. and f.*

Philip. *Phĩlĩppũs, ĩ, m.*

Pisistratus. *Pĩsĩstrãtũs, ĩ, m.*

Please. *Plãcẽð, plãcẽrẽ, plãcuĩ, plãctĩũm.*

Pleasing. *Grãtũs, ã, ũm.*

Pleasure. *Võluptãs, võluptãĩs, f.*

Plough. *Arõ, ãrãrẽ, ãrãvi, ãrãtũm.*

Plunder (verb). *Spõlĩõ, ãrẽ, ãvi, ãtũm.*

Practise. *Exercẽð, exercẽrẽ, exercũi, exercĩtũm; cõlõ, cõlẽrẽ, cõluĩ, cultũm.*

Praise (verb). *Laudõ, ãrẽ, ãvi, ãtũm.*

Praise (noun). *Laus, laudĩs, f.*

Precept. *Praecẽptũm, ĩ, n.*

Predict. *Praedĩcõ, praedĩcẽrẽ, praedĩxi, praedĩctũm.*

Present (noun). *Dõnũm, ĩ, n.*

Publius. *Publĩũs, ũ, m.*

Punish. *Pũniõ, ĩrẽ, ĩvi, ĩtũm.*

Pupil. *Discĩpũlũs, ĩ, m.*

Put to flight. *Fũgõ, ãrẽ, ãvi, ãtũm.*

Q.

Queen. *Rẽgĩnã, ae, f.*

R.

Receive. *Accĩpĩõ, accĩpẽrẽ, accẽpĩ, accẽptũm.*

Reign, royal authority. *Regnũm, ĩ, n.*

Renowned. *Clãrũs, ã, ũm.*

Reside. *Hãbitõ, ãrẽ, ãvi, ãtũm.*

Rhine. *Rhẽnũs, ĩ, m.*

River. *Amnũs, amnũs, m.*

Roman. *Rõmãnũs, ã, ũm.*

Roman, a Roman. *Rõmãnũs, ĩ, m.*

Rome. *Rõma, ae, f.*

Romulus. *Rõmũlũs, ĩ, m.*

Rule. *Rẽgõ, rẽgẽrẽ, rexĩ, rectũm.*

S.

Safety. *Sãlũs, sãlũtĩs, f.*

Same. *Idẽm, eãdẽm, idẽm.* See 186.

Say. *Dĩcõ, dĩcẽrẽ, dĩxi, dĩctũm.*

Save.

Scipi

Senat

Serve

Servi

Settin

Shall

tens

Shall

Fut

Sheph

Shoul

mig

Show

Sicily

Silent

Silver

Sing.

Singin

Six.

Slave.

Sleep.

Soldie

Somet

ãltqu

191.

Son.

Son-in

Song.

Speak.

State.

Streng

Sun.

Sunset

Sword.

Take.

Take b

ãtũm.

Tarquin

Tell.

Temple

Save. *Servō, arē, avi, atum.*
 Scipiō. *Sāpiō, Scipiōnis, m.*
 Senator. *Sēnātor, sēnātoris, m.*
 Serve. *Serviō, irē, ivi, itum.*
 Servius. *Serviūs, ū, m.*
 Setting. *Occāsūs, ūs, m.*
 Shall, will. *Signs of the Future tense.*
 Shall have, will have. *Signs of the Future Perfect tense.*
 Shepherd. *Pastōr, pastōris, m.*
 Should, should have. See *might, might have.*
 Show. *Monstrō, arē, avi, atum.*
 Sicily. *Siciliā, ae, f.*
 Silent. See *be silent.*
 Silver. *Argentūm, ī, n.*
 Sing. *Cantō, arē, avi, atum.*
 Singing, a song. *Cantūs, ūs, m.*
 Six. *Sex.* See 176.
 Slave. *Serviūs, ī, m.*
 Sleep. *Dormiō, irē, ivi, itum.*
 Soldier. *Milēs, militis, m.*
 Somebody, some one. *Aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, or aliquid.* See 191.
 Son. *Filiūs, ū, m.*
 Son-in-law. *Gēnēr, gēnērī, m.*
 Song. *Carmēn, carminis, n.*
 Speak. *Dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum.*
 State. *Civitas, civitatis, f.*
 Strengthen. *Firmō, arē, avi, atum.*
 Sun. *Sōl, solis, m.*
 Sunset. *Occāsūs solis.*
 Sword. *Gladiūs, ū, m.*

T.

Take. *Cāpiō, cāperē, cepi, captum.*
 Take by storm. *Expugnō, arē, avi, atum.*
 Tarquin. *Tarquinius, ū, m.*
 Tell. *Dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum.*
 Temple. *Templum, ī, n.*

Te. *Dēcēm.* See 176.
 Terrify. *Terreō, terrere, terrui, territum.*
 Than. *Quān.* Often omitted, in which case the Ablative follows. See 417.
 That. *Illē, illā, illud.* See 186.
 The. *Not to be translated, as the Latin has no article.* See p. 12, note 1.
 Their. *Suūs, ō, ūm.*
 Then. *Tūm, adv.*
 Thing. *Rēs, rei, f.*
 This. *Hic, haec, hōc.* See 186.
 Three. *Trēs, triū.* See 175.
 Time. *Tempūs, temporis, n.*
 To. *Ad, in,* preps. with acc. *To* is sometimes denoted by the Accusative, and sometimes by the Dative. See 379 and 384
 True. *Vērūs, ō, ūm.*
 Truth. *Verūm, ī, n.*
 Tullia. *Tullia, ae, f.*
 Two. *Duō, duae, duō.* See 175.
 Tyrant. *Tyrannūs, ī, m.*

U.

Usc. *Usus, ūs, m.*
 Useful. *Utīlis, ē.*

V.

Valor. *Virtūs, virtutis, f.*
 Valuable. *Prētiosūs, ō, ūm.*
 Very. *Sometimes the sign of the Superlative.* See 160.
 Victoria. *Victōriā, ae, f.*
 Victory. *Victōriā, ae, f.*
 Violate. *Viōlō, arē, avi, atum.*
 Virtue. *Virtūs, virtutis, f.*

W.

Walk. *Ambulō, arē, avi, atum.*
 War. *Bellum, ī, n.*

ep one's
e p. 74,
might,
ātūm.
ī, scrip-

vestrā,

D. APPLETON & CO.'S

LEADING TEXT-BOOKS.

READERS.

APPLETONS' SCHOOL READERS consist of Five Books, by William T. Harris, LL. D., Superintendent of Schools, St. Louis, Mo.; Andrew J. Rickoff, A. M., Superintendent of Instruction, Cleveland, O.; and Mark Bailey, A. M., Instructor in Elocution, Yale College.

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Appletons' First Reader. | Appletons' Fourth Reader. |
| Appletons' Second Reader. | Appletons' Fifth Reader. |
| Appletons' Third Reader. | Appletons' Primary Reading Charts. |

STANDARD SUPPLEMENTARY READERS.

I. Easy Steps for Little Feet.....	\$ 0 30
II. Golden Book of Choice Reading.....	35
III. Book of Tales.....	60
IV. Readings in Nature's Book.....	80
V. Seven American Classics.....	60
VI. Seven British Classics.....	60

GEOGRAPHY.

Appletons' New Elementary Geography.....	65
Appletons' Higher Geography.....	1 50
Cornell's Primary Geography.....	61
Cornell's Intermediate Geography.....	1 20
Cornell's Physical Geography.....	1 30
Cornell's Grammar-School Geography.....	1 40
Cornell's First Steps in Geography.....	36
Cornell's High-School Geography.....	80
Cornell's High-School Atlas.....	1 60
Cornell's Outline Maps..... per set, 13 Maps,	13 25
Cornell's Map-Drawing Cards..... per set,	45
Patton's Natural Resources of the United States.....	45

MATHEMATICS.

Appletons' Primary Arithmetic.....	\$0 20
Appletons' Elementary Arithmetic.....	35
Appletons' Mental Arithmetic.....	32
Appletons' Practical Arithmetic.....	72
Appletons' Higher Arithmetic.....	1 00
Colin's Metric System.....	50
Gillespie's Land Surveying.....	2 60
Gillespie's Leveling and Higher Surveying.....	2 20
Inventional Geometry (Spencer's).....	45
Richards's Plane and Spherical Trigonometry, with applica- tions.....	1 75

GRAMMAR, COMPOSITION, and LITERATURE.

Bain's Composition and Rhetoric.....	1 50
Ballard's Words, and how to put them together.....	40
Ballard's Word-writer...!	10
Ballard's Pieces to Speak.....per part,	20
Covell's Digest.....	80
Gilmore's English Language and Literature.....	60
Literature Primers (English Grammar—English Literature—Phil- ology—Classical Geography—Shakespeare—Studies in Bry- ant—Greek Literature—English Grammar Exercises—Ho- mer—English Composition).....each,	45
Morris's Historical English Grammar.....	1 00
Northend's Memcry Gems.....	20
Northend's Choice Thoughts.....	30
Northend's Gems of Thought.....	75
Quackenbos's Primary Grammar.....	40
Quackenbos's English Grammar.....	72
Quackenbos's Illustrated Lessons in our Language.....	50
Quackenbos's First Lessons in Composition.....	80
Quackenbos's Composition and Rhetoric.....	1 30
Spalding's English Literature.....	1 30
Stickney's Child's Book of Language. Four Numbers.... each,	10
Teacher's edition of same.....	35
Stickney's Letters and Lessons..... each,	20

Bay
Hist
Mar
Mor
Qua
Qua
Qua
Saw
"
Will
Time
Alder
Arno
Atkir
Bain'
Bain'
Bain'
Comin
Descr
I
Gilmo
Hensl
Huxle
Le Co
Locky
Lupto
Morse
Munse
Nichol
Nichol
Quack
Rains'

HISTORY.

	Bayard Taylor's History of Germany.....	\$1 50
	History Primers: Rome—Greece—Europe—Old Greek Life—Geography—Roman Antiquities.....each,	45
	Markham's History of England.....	1 30
	Morris's History of England.....	1 25
	Quackenbos's Elementary History of the United States.....	60
	Quackenbos's School History of the United States.....	1 20
	Quackenbos's American History.....	1 15
	Quackenbos's Illustrated School History of the World.....	1 50
	Sewell's Child's History of Rome.....	65
	“ “ “ “ Greece.....	65
	Willard's Synopsis of General History.....	2 00
	Timayenis's History of Greece. Two vols.....	3 50

SCIENCE.

	Alden's Intellectual Philosophy.....	1 10
	Arnott's Physics.....	3 00
	Atkinson's Ganot's Physics.....	3 00
	Bain's Mental Science.....	1 50
	Bain's Moral Science.....	1 50
	Bain's Logic.....	2 00
	Comings's Physiology.....	1 50
	Deschaneis's Natural Philosophy. One vol.....	5 70
	In four parts.....each,	1 50
	Gilmore's Logic.....	75
	Henslow's Botanical Charts.....	15 75
	Huxley and Youmans's Physiology.....	1 50
	Le Conte's Geology.....	4 00
	Lockyer's Astronomy.....	1 50
	Lupton's Scientific Agriculture.....	45
	Morse's First Book of Zoology.....	1 10
	Munsell's Psychology.....	1 70
	Nicholson's Geology.....	1 30
	Nicholson's Zoology.....	1 50
	Quackenbos's Natural Philosophy.....	1 50
	Rains's Chemical Analysis.....	50

LATIN.

	Arnold's First and Second Latin Book.....	\$1 10
	Arnold's Latin Prose Composition.....	1 10
\$0 45	Arnold's Cornelius Nepos.....	1 30
1 30	Butler's Sallust's Jugurtha and Catiline.....	1 50
1 30	Cicero de Officiis.....	1 10
1 50	Crosby's Quintus Curtius Rufus.....	1 30
85	Crosby's Sophocles's Œdipus Tyrannus.....	1 30
1 30	Frieze's Quintilian.....	1 30
	Frieze's Virgil's Æneid.....	1 70
	Frieze's Six Books of Virgil, with Vocabulary.....	
	Harkness's Arnold's First Latin Book.....	1 30
	Harkness's Second Latin Book.....	1 10
14	Harkness's Introductory Latin Book.....	1 10
15	Harkness's Latin Grammar.....	1 30
18	Harkness's Elements of Latin Grammar.....	1 10
25	Harkness's Latin Reader.....	1 10
25	Harkness's New Latin Reader.....	1 10
35	Harkness's Latin Reader, with Exercises.....	1 30
45	Harkness's Latin Prose Composition.....	1 30
60	Harkness's Cæsar, with Dictionary.....	1 30
30	Harkness's Cicero.....	1 30
40	Harkness's Cicero, with Dictionary.....	1 50
30	Harkness's Sallust's Catiline, with Dictionary.....	1 15
45	Harkness's Course in Cæsar, Sallust, and Cicero, with Dictionary.....	1 75
40	Johnson's Cicero's Select Orations.....	1 30
45	Lincoln's Horace.....	1 50
25	Lincoln's Livy.....	1 50
45	Sewall's Latin Speaker.....	1 00
12	Tyler's Tacitus.....	1 50
	Tyler's Germania and Agricola.....	1 10

GREEK.

	Arnold's First Greek Book.....	1 10
	Arnold's Greek Prose Composition.....	1 30
	Arnold's Second Greek Prose Composition.....	1 30
	Arnold's Greek Reading Book.....	1 30
1 70	Boise's Three Books of the Anabasis, with Lexicon.....	1 30
2 20	Boise's Five Books of the Anabasis, with Lexicon.....	1 30
1 30		

GREEK.—(Continued.)

Boise's Greek Prose Composition.....	\$1 30
Boise's Anabasis.....	1 70
Coy's Mayor's Greek for Beginners.....	1 25
Hadley's Greek Grammar.....	1 70
Hadley's Elements of Greek Grammar.....	1 30
Hadley's Greek Verbs.....	25
Harkness's First Greek Book.....	1 30
Johnson's Three Books of the Iliad.....	1 25
Johnson's Herodotus.....	1 30
Kendrick's Greek Ollendorff.....	1 50
Kühner's Greek Grammar.....	1 70
Owen's Xenophon's Anabasis.....	1 70
Owen's Homer's Iliad.....	1 70
Owen's Greek Reader.....	1 70
Owen's Acts of the Apostles.....	1 50
Owen's Homer's Odyssey.....	1 70
Owen's Thucydides.....	2 20
Owen's Xenophon's Cyropædia.....	2 20
Robbins's Xenophon's Memorabilia.....	1 70
Silber's Progressive Lessons in Greek.....	1 10
Smead's Antigone.....	1 50
Smead's Philippics of Demosthenes.....	1 30
Tyler's Plato's Apology and Crito.....	1 30
Tyler's Plutarch.....	1 30
Whiton's First Lessons in Greek.....	1 30

GERMAN.

Adler's Progressive German Reader.....	1 30
Adler's Hand-book of German Literature.....	1 30
Adler's German Dictionary, 8vo.....	4 50
" " " 12mo.....	2 25
Ahn's German Grammar.....	85
Kroeh's First German Reader.....	35
Oehlschlaeger's Pronouncing German Reader.....	1 10
Ollendorff's New Method of Learning German.....	1 10
Prendergast's Mastery Series—German.....	45
Roemer's Polyglot Reader—German.....	1 30
Schulte's Elementary German Course.....	85

Wra
Wra
Wra

Ahn
Bad
Barb
De F
De F
De F
De P
De P
Have
Jewe
"
Marc
Ollen
Ollen
Roem
Rowa
Simon
Spier
"

Ahn's
De To
Ollen
Prend
Schele
Veláz
Veláz
"

Arnold's Latin Course :

- I. FIRST AND SECOND LATIN BOOK AND PRACTICAL GRAMMAR. Revised and Carefully Corrected, by J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo, 859 pages.
- II. PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION, Revised and carefully corrected by J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo, 856 pages.
- III. CORNELIUS NEPOS. With Questions and Answers, and an Imitative Exercise on each Chapter. With Notes by E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin, in University of New York. New edition, enlarged, with a Lexicon, Historical and Geographical Index, etc. 12mo, 350 pages.

Arnold's Classical Series has attained a circulation almost unparalleled, having been introduced into nearly all the leading educational institutions in the United States. The secret of this success is, that the author has hit upon the true system of teaching the ancient languages. He exhibits them not as dead, but as living tongues; and by imitation and repetition, the means which Nature herself points out to the child learning his mother-tongue, he familiarizes the student with the idioms employed by the elegant writers and speakers of antiquity.

The First and Second Latin Book should be put into the hands of the beginners, who will soon acquire from its pages a better idea of the language than could be gained by months of study according to the old system. The reason of this is, that every thing has a practical bearing, and a principle is no sooner learned than it is applied. The pupil is at once set to work on exercises.

The Prose Composition forms an excellent sequel to the above work, or may be used with any other course. It teaches the art of writing Latin more correctly and thoroughly, more easily and pleasantly, than any other work. In its pages Latin synonyms are carefully illustrated, differences of idioms noted, cautions as to common errors impressed on the mind, and every help afforded toward attaining a pure and flowing Latin style.

From N. WHEELER, Principal of Worcester County High School.

"In the skill with which he sets forth the *idiomatic peculiarities*, as well as in the directness and simplicity with which he states the facts of the ancient languages, Mr. Arnold has no superior. I know of no books so admirably adapted to awaken an *interest* in the study of the language, or so well fitted to lay the foundation of a correct scholarship and refined taste."

From A. B. RUSSELL, Oakland High School.

"The style in which the books are got up are not their only recommendation. With thorough instruction on the part of the teacher using these books as text-books, I am confident a much more ample return for the time and labor bestowed by our youth upon Latin must be secured. The time certainly has come when an advance must be made upon the old methods of instruction. I am glad to have a work that promises so many advantages as Arnold's First and Second Latin Book to beginners."

From C. M. BLAKE, Classical Teacher, Philadelphia.

"I am much pleased with Arnold's Latin Books. A class of my older boys have just finished the First and Second Book. They had studied Latin for a long time before, but never *understood* it, they say, as they do now."

AR. Re-
pages.
ON, Re-
ages.

Exercise
n, in Uni-
orical and

ing been
d States.
teaching
; and by
ild learn-
d by the

ners, who
ained by
ery thing
The pupil

may be
ectly and
in syno.
on errors
flowing

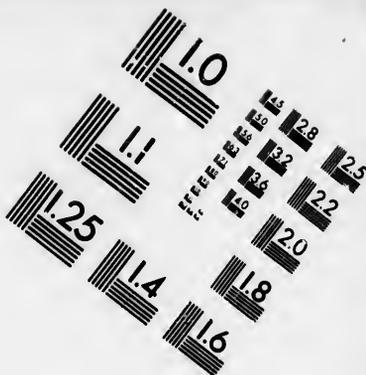
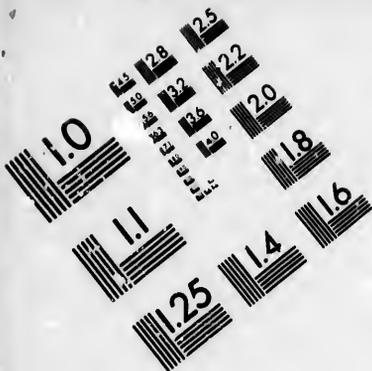
as in the
ges, Mr.
n *inter-*
ct schol-

. With
ks, I am
th upon
be made
o many

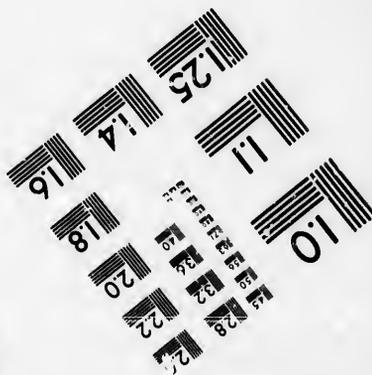
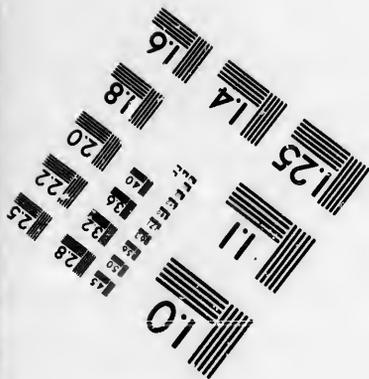
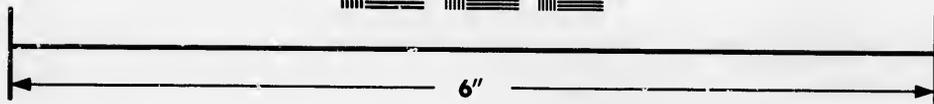
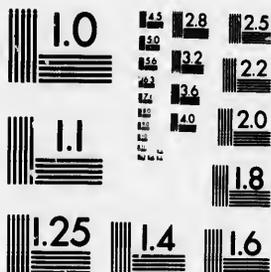
ave just
before,

10





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**

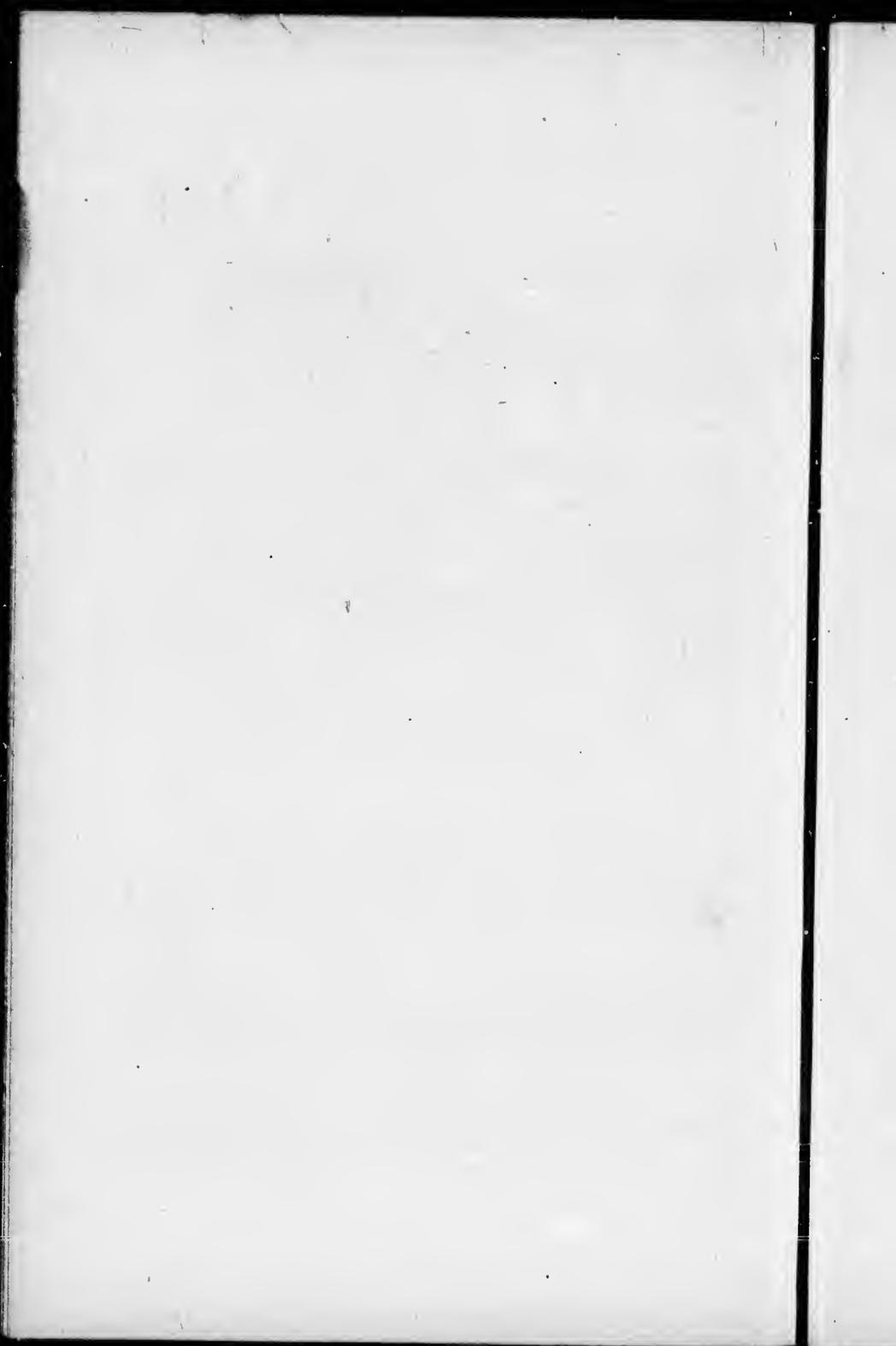


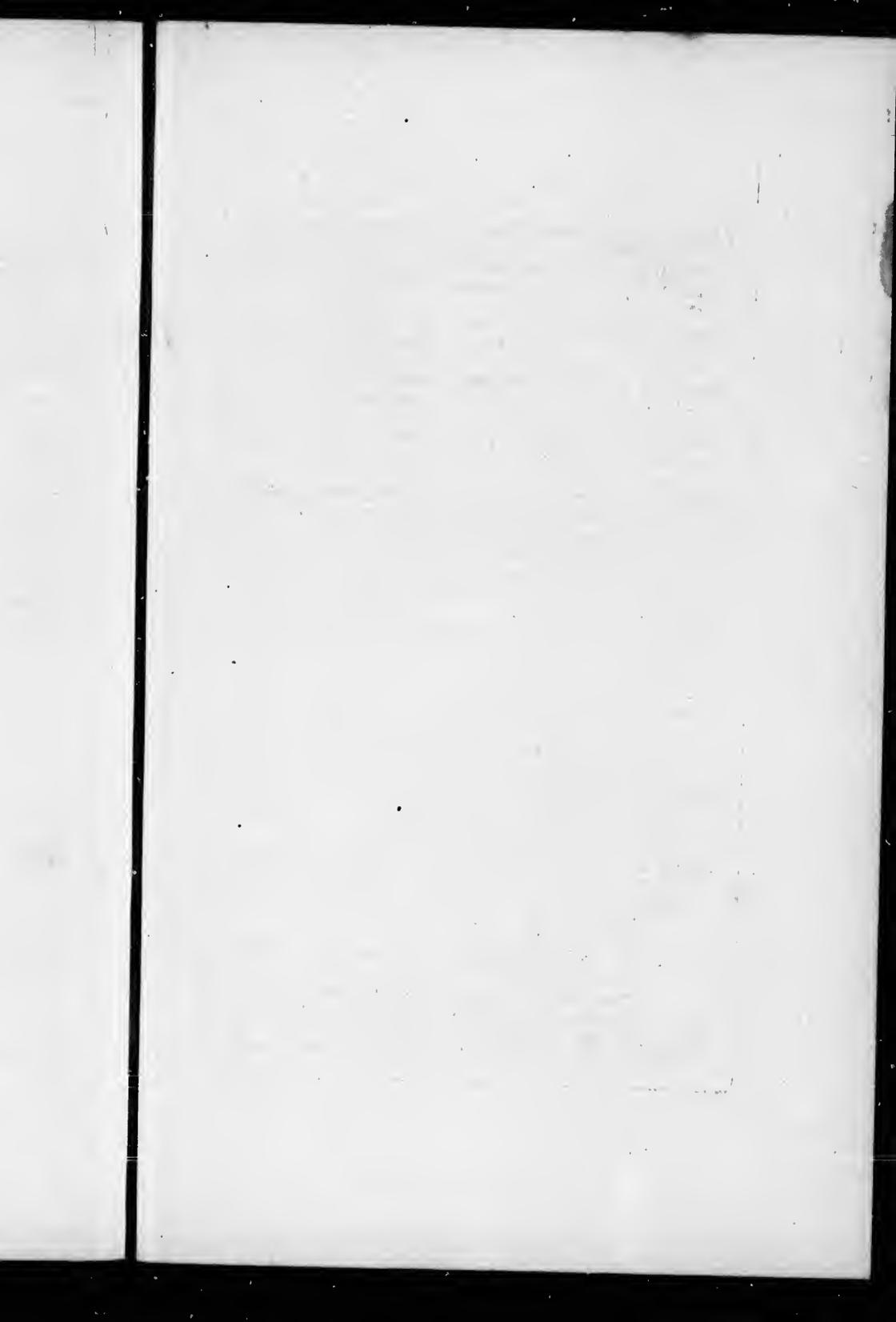
**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

10
15
16
18
20
22
25

10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25





STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

- Arnold's Greek Reading Book**, containing the Substance of the Practical Introduction to Greek Construing and a Treatise on the Greek Particles; also, copious Selections from Greek Authors, with Critical and Explanatory English Notes, and a Lexicon. 12mo. 618 pages.
- Boise's Exercises in Greek Prose Composition**. Adapted to the First Book of Xenophon's Anabasis. By JAMES R. BOISE, Prof. of Greek in University of Michigan. 12mo. 185 pages.
- Champlin's Short and Comprehensive Greek Grammar**. By J. T. CHAMPLIN, Professor of Greek and Latin in Waterville College. 12mo. 208 pages.
- First Lessons in Greek;*** or, the Beginner's Companion-Book to Hadley's Grammar. By JAMES MORRIS WHITON, Rector of Hopkins's Grammar School, New Haven, Ct. 12mo.
- Hadley's Greek Grammar,*** for Schools and Colleges. By JAMES HADLEY, Professor in Yale College. 12mo. 366 pages.
- **Elements of the Greek Grammar**. 12mo.
- Herodotus, Selections from;** comprising mainly such portions as give a Connected History of the East, to the Fall of Babylon and the Death of Cyrus the Great. By HERMAN M. JOHNSON, D. D., 12mo. 185 pages.
- Homer's Iliad**, according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes, by JOHN J. OWEN, D. D., LL. D., Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy of the City of New York. 1 vol., 12mo. 759 pages.
- **Odyssey**, according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. Sixteenth Edition. 12mo.
- Kuhner's Greek Grammar**. Translated by Professors EDWARDS and TAYLOR. Large 12mo. 620 pages.
- Kendrick's Greek Ollendorff.*** Being a Progressive Exhibition of the Principles of the Greek Grammar. By ASAHEL C. KENDRICK, Prof. of Greek Language in the University of Rochester. 12mo. 371 pages.
- Owen's Xenophon's Anabasis**. A new and enlarged edition, with numerous references to Kuhner's, Crosby's, and Hadley's Grammars. 12mo.
- **Homer's Iliad**. 12mo. 759 pages.
- **Greek Reader**. 12mo.
- **Acts of the Apostles**, in Greek, with a Lexicon. 12mo.
- **Homer's Odyssey**. Tenth Edition. 12mo.
- **Thucydides**. With Map. 12mo. 700 pages.
- **Xenophon's Cyropaedia**. Eighth Edition. 12mo.
- Plato's Apology and Crito.*** With Notes by W. S. TYLER, Graves Professor of Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 180 pp.

STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

Thucydides's History of the Peloponnesian War, according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. With Map. 12mo.

Xenophon's Memorabilia of Socrates. With Notes and Introduction by R. D. C. ROBBINS, Professor of Language in Middlebury College. 12mo. 421 pages.

— **Anabasis**. With Explanatory Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By JAMES R. BOISE, Professor of Greek in the University of Michigan. 12mo. 893 pages.

— **Anabasis**. Chiefly according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. Revised Edition. With Map. 12mo.

— **Cyropaedia**, according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. 12mo.

Sophocles's Oedipus Tyrannus. With Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By HOWARD CROSBY, Professor of Greek in the University of New York. 12mo. 188 pages.

HEBREW AND SYRIAC.

Gesenius's Hebrew Grammar. Seventeenth Edition, with Corrections and Additions, by Dr. E. RODIGER. Translated by T. J. CONANT, Professor of Hebrew in Rochester Theological Seminary, New York. 8vo. 361 pages.

Uhlemann's Syriac Grammar. Translated from the German. By ENOCH HUTCHINSON. With a Course of Exercises in Syriac Grammar, and a Crestomathy and brief Lexicon prepared by the Translator. 8vo. 367 pages.



COPP, CLARKE & CO.,

**Publishers, Booksellers, General
and Manufacturing Stationers,
Dealers in Fancy Goods,**

9 FRONT ST. WEST,

TORONTO, ONTARIO.

